

2012

GX 460

OWNER'S MANUAL

Your Lexus dealer

Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.
If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, please call the following number:

U.S. OWNERS

- In the U.S. mainland or Canada:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)
- In Hawaii:
  Servco Automotive Roadside Assistance/Customer Services
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)

CANADIAN OWNERS

- In Canada or the U.S. mainland:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service
  1-800-26-LEXUS or 1-800-265-3987 (Toll-Free)

Please access our **websites** for further information.

- The U.S. mainland: www.lexus.com
- Hawaii: www.servcolexus.com
- Canada : www.lexus.ca

©2011 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	**Before driving**	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	**When driving**	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	**Interior features**	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	**Maintenance and care**	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	**When trouble arises**	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	**Vehicle specifications**	Detailed vehicle information.
7	**For owners**	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners and seat belt and SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners.
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio/video system
- Rear seat entertainment system
- Air conditioning
- Windshield wiper de-icer
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging
- Hands-free system (for cellular phone)
- Intuitive parking assist
- Wide view front & side monitor
- Lexus Enform with Safety Connect

1 Before driving

1-1. Key information

Keys 26

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart access system with push-button start 29
Wireless remote control 47
Side doors 50
Back door 53
Glass hatch 58

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Front seats 63
Rear seats 67
Driving position memory (driver's seat) 78
Head restraints 82
Seat belts 85
Steering wheel 93
Inside rear view mirror 95
Outside rear view mirrors 97

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 101
Moon roof 104

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 109

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 115
Alarm 117

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 120
SRS airbags 122
Front passenger occupant classification system 139
Child restraint systems 146
Installing child restraints 151

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 168
Engine (ignition) switch 179
Automatic transmission 186
Turn signal lever 192
Parking brake 193
Horn 194

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 195
Indicators and warning lights 198
Multi-information display (Optitron meters) 204
Multi-information display (Accessory meters) 212

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch 219
Automatic High Beam 226
Fog light switch 233
Windshield wipers and washer 236
Rear window wiper and washer 242
Headlight cleaner switch 245

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 246
Dynamic radar cruise control 250
Intuitive parking assist 266
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 275
Rear view monitor system 281
Wide view front & side monitor 286
Multi-terrain Select 296
Multi-terrain Monitor 304
Rear height control air suspension 316
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) 321
Four-wheel drive system 322
Crawl Control 328
DAC (Downhill Assist Control system) 332
Driving assist systems 335
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 343

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions 353
Cargo and luggage 358
Vehicle load limits 364
Winter driving tips 366
Trailer towing 370
Dinghy towing 389

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system 392
Rear automatic air conditioning system 407
Rear window defogger switch..... 411
Windshield wiper de-icer..... 412

3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system 413
Using the radio..... 415
Using the CD player..... 423
Playing MP3 and WMA discs..... 431
Operating an iPod..... 440
Operating a USB memory..... 448
Optimal use of the audio system 457
Using the AUX port..... 459
Using the steering wheel audio switches 460

3-3. Using the Bluetooth® audio system

Bluetooth® audio system 464
Using the Bluetooth® audio system 468
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player..... 474
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player..... 477
Bluetooth® audio system setup 484

3-4. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system for cellular phones..... 485
Using the hands-free system (for cellular phones)..... 489
Making a phone call..... 497
Setting a cellular phone..... 502
Security and system setup..... 507
Using the phone book..... 511

3-5. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 519
• Personal/interior light main switch 520
• Personal/interior lights..... 521

3-6. Using the storage features

List of storage features 523
- Glove box 525
- Console box 526
- Coin holder 528
- Bottle holders/door pockets 529
- Cup holders 530
- Auxiliary boxes 533

3-7. Other interior features

Cool box 535
Sun visors 538
Vanity mirror 539
Clock 540
Conversation mirror 541
Power outlet (12 V DC) 542
Power outlet (120 V AC) 544
Heated steering wheel 549
Seat heaters and ventilators 551
Armrest 554
Coat hooks 555
Floor mat 556
Luggage compartment features 558
Garage door opener 567
Compass 575
Safety Connect 580

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 588
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 593

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 596
General maintenance 598
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 602

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 603
Hood 608
Engine compartment 609
Tires 628
Tire inflation pressure 635
Wheels 639
Air conditioning filter 642
Electronic key battery 644
Checking and replacing fuses 647
Headlight aim (vehicles with low beam halogen bulbs) 660
Light bulbs 662

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 676
If your vehicle needs to be towed 677
If you think something is wrong 683
Fuel pump shut off system 684
Event data recorder 685

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 688
If a warning message is displayed 700
If you have a flat tire 721
If the engine will not start 735
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 737
If you lose your keys 738
If the electronic key does not operate properly 739
If the vehicle battery is discharged 741
If your vehicle overheats 744
If the vehicle becomes stuck 747
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 749

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 752
Fuel information 764
Tire information 768

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 782

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 802

7 For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 804
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 805
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 807

Index

Abbreviation list 818

Alphabetical index 820

What to do if..... 832

Exterior



Moon roof P. 104

Front turn signal lights P. 192

Outside rear view mirrors P. 97

Windshield wipers P. 236

Side turn signal lights P. 192

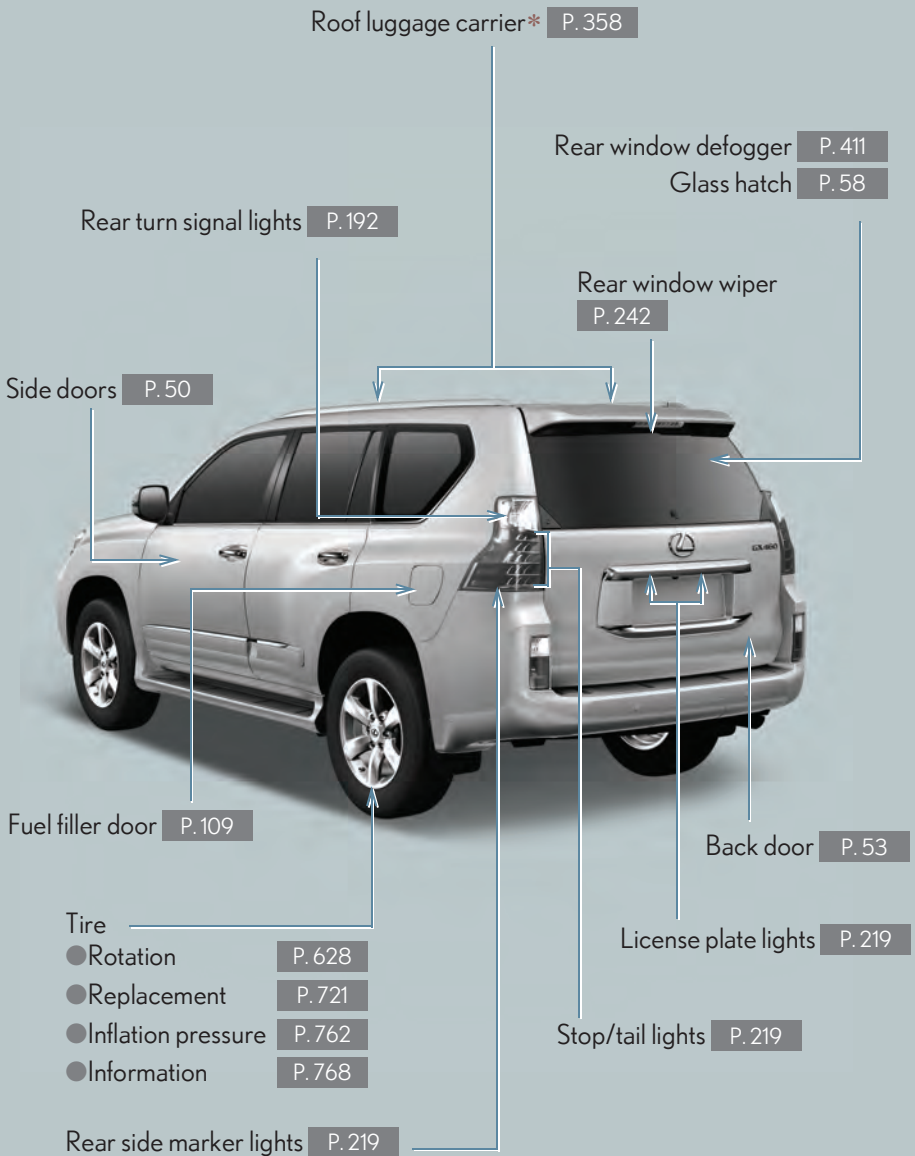
Hood P. 608

Headlights (high beam) and daytime running lights P. 219, 224

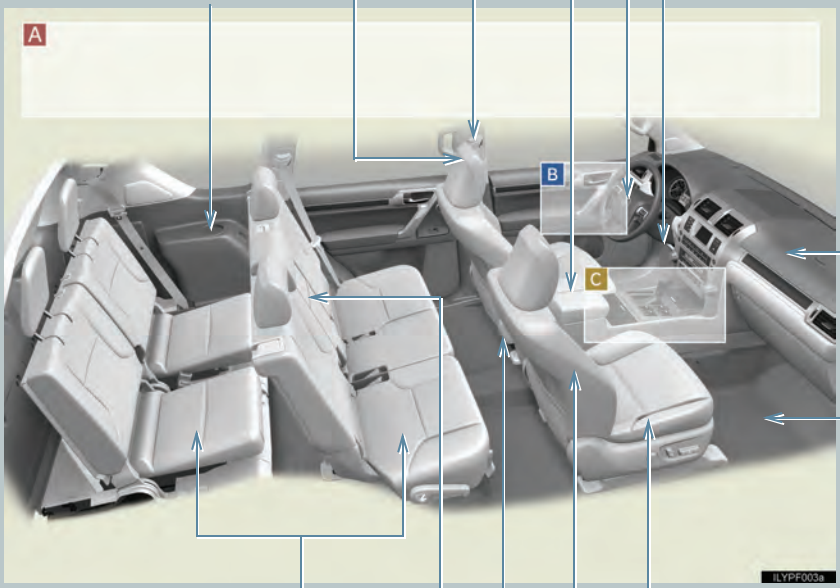
Parking/front side marker lights P. 219

Headlights (low beam) P. 219

Fog lights P. 233

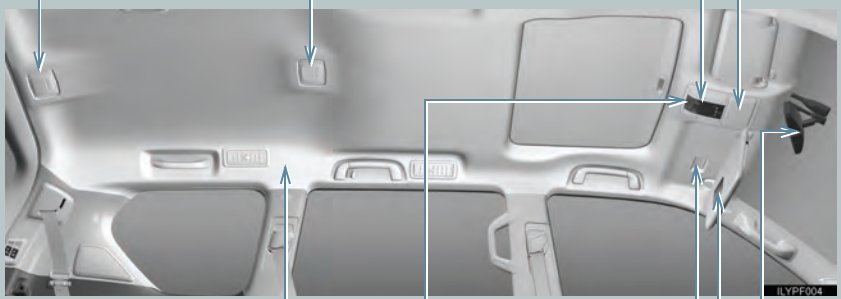

Roof luggage carrier* P. 358
Rear window defogger P. 411
Glass hatch P. 58
Rear turn signal lights P. 192
Rear window wiper P. 242
Side doors P. 50
Fuel filler door P. 109
Back door P. 53
Tire
Rotation P. 628
Replacement P. 721
Inflation pressure P. 762
Information P. 768
License plate lights P. 219
Stop/tail lights P. 219
Rear side marker lights P. 219

*: If equipped



Console box* P. 526
Cool box* P. 535
Seat belts P. 85
Head restraints P. 82
Cup holders* P. 530
Auxiliary box* P. 533
SRS driver airbag P. 122
SRS knee airbag P. 122
SRS front passenger airbag P. 122
Rear seats P. 67
Armrest P. 554
Cup holders P. 530
Rear air conditioning system* P. 407
Outer second seat heater switches* P. 552
Floor mat P. 556
Front seats P. 63
SRS side airbags P. 122

A



Auxiliary box P. 533
Conversation mirror P. 541

Personal/interior lights P. 521

Personal/interior lights P. 520
"SOS" button* P. 580

Vanity lights P. 539

SRS curtain shield airbags P. 122

Vanity mirrors P. 539
Sun visors P. 538

Moon roof switches P. 104

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 95
Compass* P. 575
Garage door opener switches P. 567

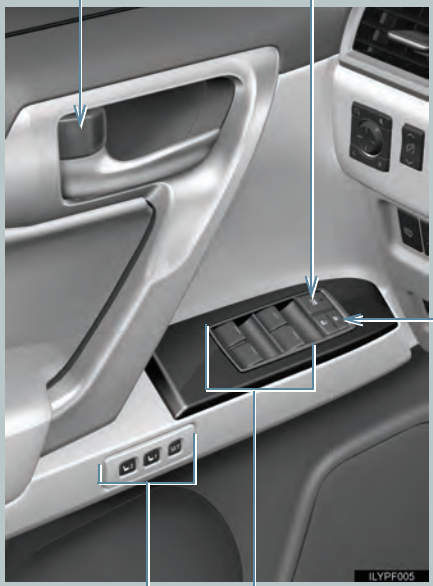
*: If equipped

B

Inside door lock button P. 50

Door lock switches P. 50

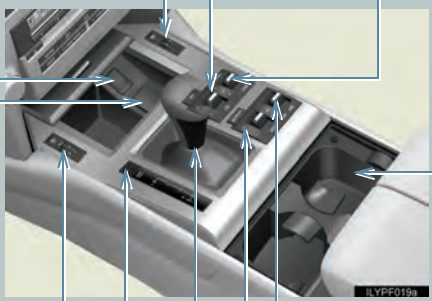
Window lock switch P. 101



Power window switches P. 101

Driving position memory switches P. 78

C



Front seat heater/ventilator switch P. 551

Height control switch* P. 316

AUX/USB port P. 440, 448, 459

AVS switch* P. 321

Cup holders P. 530

Power outlet P. 542

Four-wheel drive control switch P. 322

Front seat heater/ventilator switch P. 551

Crawl Control switch* P. 328

DAC switch* P. 332

Shift lock override button P. 737

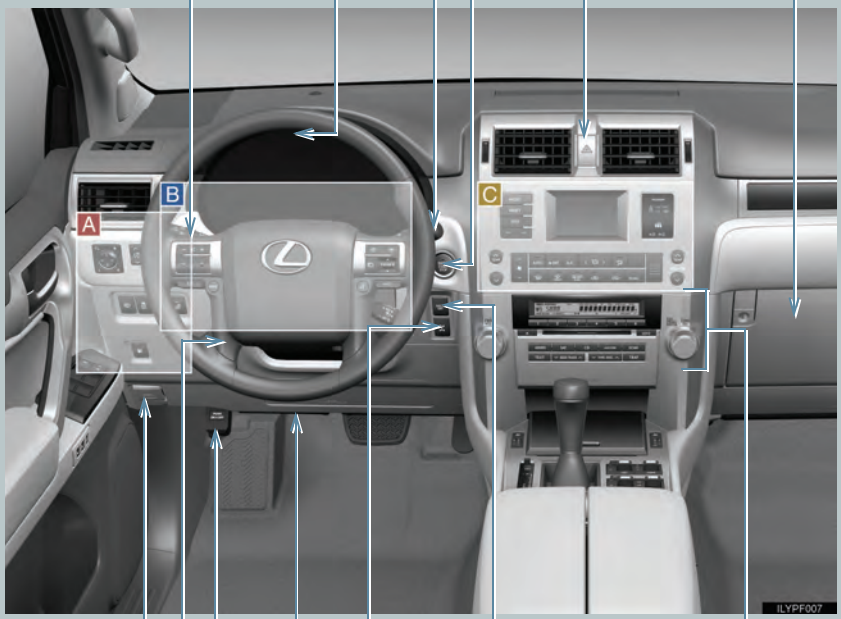
Shift lever P. 186

*: If equipped

Instrument panel

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 236
Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 242

Gauge and meters P. 195
Engine (ignition) switch P. 179
Headlight switch P. 219
Turn signal lever P. 192
Fog light switch P. 233
Automatic High Beam* P. 226
Emergency flasher switch P. 676
Glove box P. 525



Audio system* P. 413

Hood lock release lever P. 608

"RSCA OFF" switch P. 137

Center differential lock/unlock switch P. 323

Pre-collision braking off switch* P. 344

Parking brake pedal P. 193

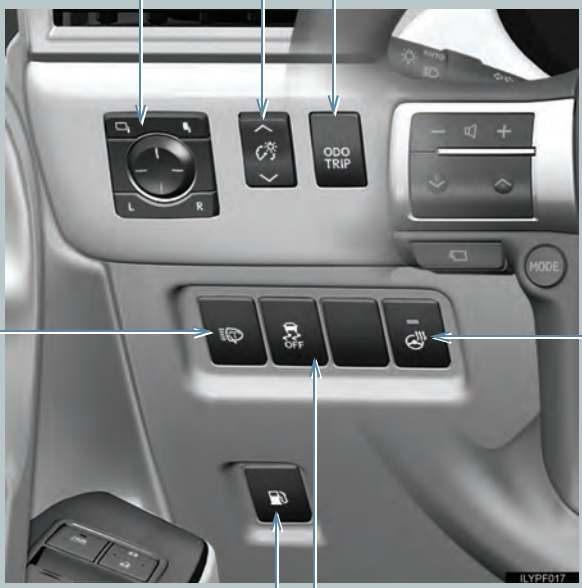
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 93

A

Instrument cluster light control switch P. 196

Outside rear view mirror switches P. 97

ODO/TRIP button P. 196



Headlight cleaner switch* P. 245

Heated steering wheel switch* P. 549

Fuel filler door opener P. 109

VSC OFF switch P. 335

*: If equipped

*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

B

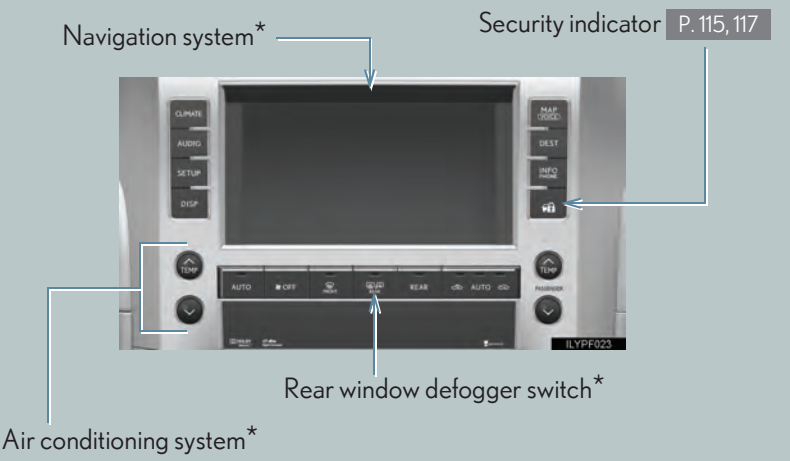

Telephone switches* P. 490
Wide view front & side monitor switch* P. 286
Audio remote control switches* P. 460
Menu switch P. 205
"ENTER" switch P. 205
Horn P. 194
"LDA" switch* P. 275
Talk switch* P. 490
Cruise control switch P. 246, 250
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button* P. 250

C

Vehicles without a navigation system



Vehicles with a navigation system



*: If equipped

*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

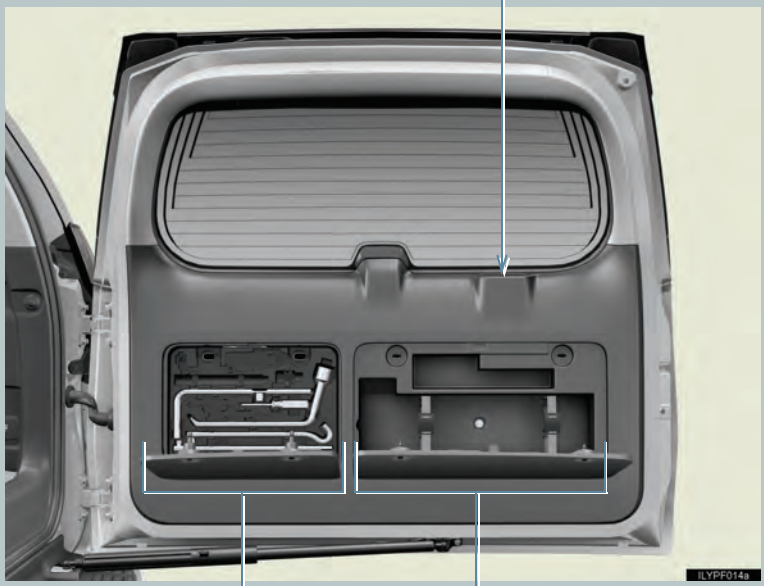
Cargo hooks P. 558



Cargo net hook P. 559

Power outlet P. 544

Back door handle



Tools P. 721

Warning reflector holder P. 558

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system and
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

⚠ CAUTION

General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause death or serious injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of death or serious injury to yourself and others.

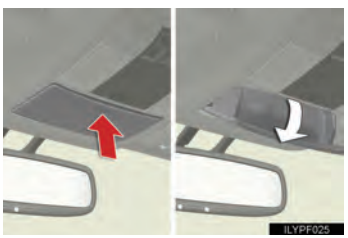
⚠ NOTICE

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations

Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Before driving 1

1-1. Key information

Keys 26

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart access system with push-button start 29

Wireless remote control 47

Side doors 50

Back door 53

Glass hatch 58

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel, etc.)

Front seats 63

Rear seats 67

Driving position memory (driver's seat) 78

Head restraints 82

Seat belts 85

Steering wheel 93

Inside rear view mirror 95

Outside rear view mirrors 97

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 101

Moon roof 104

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 109

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 115

Alarm 117

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 120

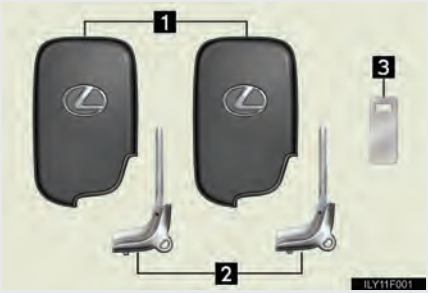
SRS airbags 122

Front passenger occupant classification system 139

Child restraint systems 146

Installing child restraints 151

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 29)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 47)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

Using the mechanical key



To take out the mechanical key, slide the release lever and take the key out.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 525)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 738)

When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent key damage

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 3.9 in. (10 cm) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 3.9 in. (10 cm) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart access system with push-button start malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ When a vehicle key is lost

If the key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys that was provided with your vehicle.

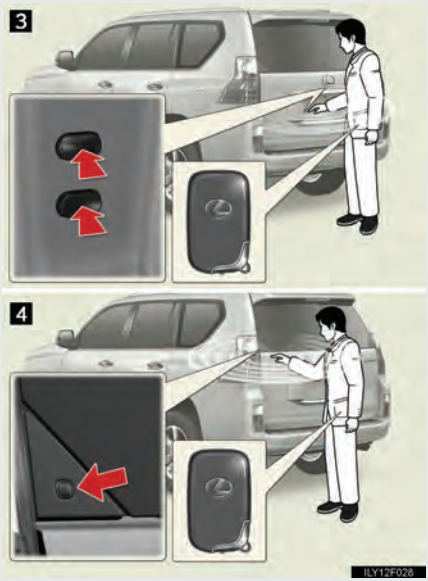
Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 31)

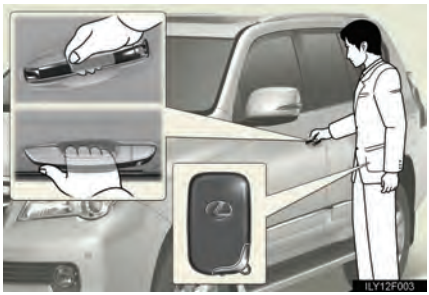
2 Starts the engine (→P. 179)



3 Locks and unlocks the back door (→P. 31)

4 Opens the glass hatch (→P. 32)

Unlocking and locking the doors (front door handles only)



Grip the handle to unlock the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the upper or lower part of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Unlocking and locking the back door



1 Locks the all doors

2 Unlocks the all doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

Opening the glass hatch

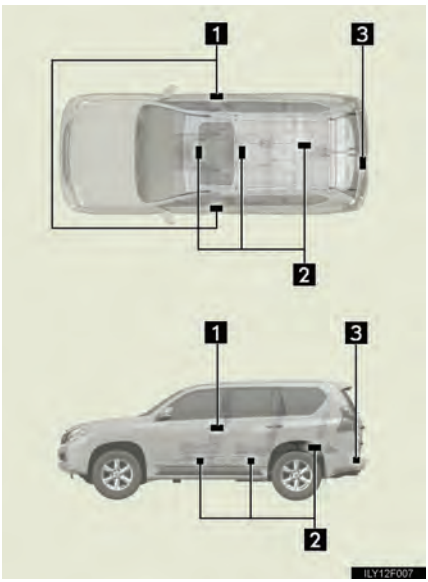


Press the button to open the glass hatch. The glass hatch will pop up.

The glass hatch can be opened only when the back door is closed.

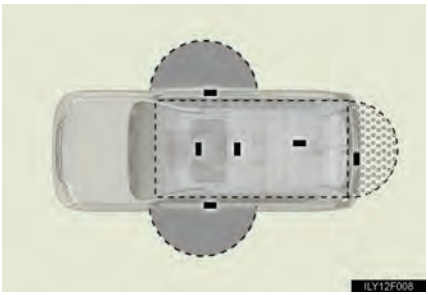
Antenna location and effective range

Antenna location



1 Antenna outside cabin
2 Antennas inside cabin
3 Antenna outside luggage compartment

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of either of the outside front door handle.

When starting the engine or changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

When opening the glass hatch and locking or unlocking the back door.

This system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of the back door handle.

Operation signals

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle



Touch both lock sensors on the upper and lower part of the door handle simultaneously.

Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display is used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation.

- When a warning message is shown on the multi-information display
  Take appropriate measures in response to the warning message on the multi-information display. (→P. 710)

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds*1	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again
	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again
	An attempt was made to close the glass hatch while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment	Open the glass hatch again and retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously*1	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in ACCESSORY mode)	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door
Interior alarm sounds continuously*1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in P	Shift the shift lever to P and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously*1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever not in P	Shift the shift lever to P, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once*1	The electronic key has a low battery	Replace the electronic key battery
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally	Start the engine with the electronic key present*2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times*1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not OFF	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle

*1: A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving signal from the key. (→P. 740)

Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ **Switching the door unlock function**

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the key surface is turned off, press and hold or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is preformed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat STEP 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps three times Interior: Pings once
	Hold the front passenger's door handle to unlock all doors.	
	Hold either door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set).

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 117)

Battery-saving function

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the vehicle battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

- In the following situations, the smart access system with push-button start may take some time to unlock the doors.
  - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 6 ft. (2 m) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
  - The smart access system with push-button start has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart access system with push-button start has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control from operating properly. (Way of coping: →P. 739)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When another wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the window when the glass hatch is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover or floor, or in the glove box.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- The doors may lock or unlock if the electronic key is within the effective range and a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if a door is not opened and closed.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

■ Note for locking the doors

- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. Place the key in a position 6 ft. (2 m) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

■ **Note for the unlocking function**

- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.
- The smart access system with push-button start can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 782)

■ **To operate the system properly**

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 739)
- Starting the engine: →P. 740

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 34)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 644)
  - The smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 644

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 782)

Certification for the smart access system with push-button start

U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-2
FCC ID: NI4TMLF8-21
FCC ID: HYQ14ACX FCC ID: HYQ14ADF
FCC ID: HYQ13CZM FCC ID: HYQ13CZN

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system antennas. (→P. 33)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.



1 Locks all the doors

2 Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

4 Opens the glass hatch (press and hold)

The glass hatch can be opened only when the back door is closed.

5 Sounds the alarm (press and hold) (→P. 48)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operation signals**

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

Glass hatch: A buzzer sounds once to indicate that the glass hatch have been opened.

■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Panic mode**



When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.
To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

■ **Security feature**

→P. 37

■ **Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system.
(→P. 117)

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 39

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Key battery depletion**

→P. 44

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 644

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 782)

Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

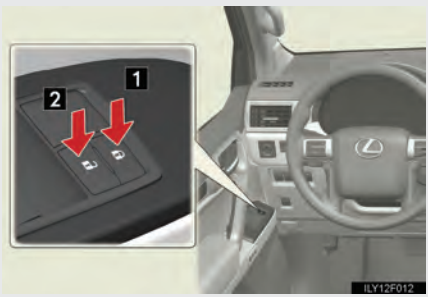
Entry function

→P. 31

Wireless remote control

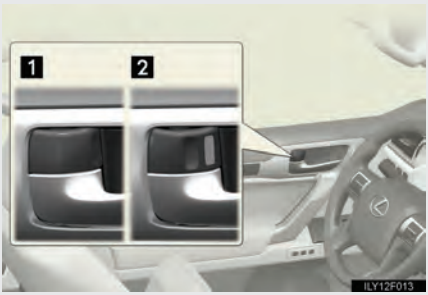
→P. 47

Door lock switch



1 Locks all the doors
2 Unlocks all the doors

Inside lock button



1 Locks the door
2 Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

Locking the driver's door from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

1 Unlock

2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 782)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in death or serious injury.

  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the second seat.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

Locking and unlocking the back door

Entry function
→P. 31

Wireless remote control
→P. 47

Door lock switch
→P. 50

Opening the back door from outside the vehicle

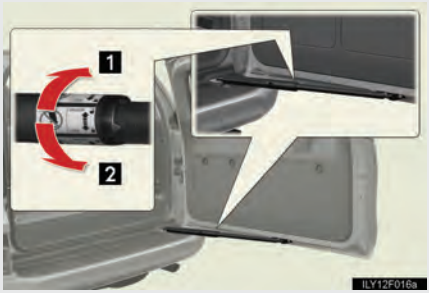


1 Pull the handle

2 Open the back door

The back door can be kept open at a desired position.

Keeping the back door open



1 Unlocks the back door stopper

2 Locks the back door stopper

The back door stopper can only be operated when the back door is fully open.

When closing the back door, check that the back door stopper is unlocked.

Rear step bumper



The rear step bumper is for rear end protection and easier step-up loading.

⚠ CAUTION

While driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not leave children alone in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.



- The back door may close if the back door stopper is not locked (specifically, when using the luggage compartment with the back door kept open at your desired position). It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door stopper is locked and secure when using the luggage compartment.



- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught. Also pay attention to your personal belongings such as bags and ties.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

⚠ CAUTION

Operating the back door

- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may fall closed again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

NOTICE

Back door damper stay

The back door is equipped with damper stay that hold the back door in place.
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not lean against, climb on or place luggage on the damper stay, or apply lateral forces to it.

Glass hatch

The glass hatch can be opened using the glass hatch opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

Entry function

→P. 32

Wireless remote control

→P. 47

Glass hatch opener



1 Press the button to pop up the glass hatch.

2 Raise

The glass hatch can be opened only when the back door is closed.

The glass hatch cannot be opened when the back door is locked. Unlock the back door to open the glass hatch. (→P. 53)

■ **When opening the glass hatch**

- Open the glass hatch slowly and carefully.
- Use the glass hatch opener when the back door is closed.

■ **Opening the glass hatch while the rear window wiper is in operation**

Rear window wiper operation will stop moving. Operation will recommence after the glass hatch has been closed.

■ **Function to prevent the glass hatch being locked with the electronic key inside**

- When all doors are being locked, closing the glass hatch with the electronic key left inside the luggage compartment will sound an alarm.
  In this case, the glass hatch can be opened using the entry function.
- Even when the spare electronic key is put in the luggage compartment with all the doors locked, the key confinement prevention function can be activated so the glass hatch can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Even when the electronic key is put in the luggage compartment with all the doors are locked, the key may not be detected depending on the places and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the doors to lock when the glass hatch is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the glass hatch.

■ **After closing the glass hatch**

Check that the glass hatch is firmly locked. If it is not firmly locked, the rear window wiper and washer will not operate correctly.

⚠ CAUTION

■ While driving

- Keep the glass hatch closed while driving.
  If the glass hatch is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the glass hatch before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the glass hatch is fully closed. If the glass hatch is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow a child to open or close the glass hatch.
Doing so may cause the glass hatch to operate unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing glass hatch.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Operating the glass hatch

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the glass hatch before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the glass hatch fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the glass hatch, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the glass hatch is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the glass hatch in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.



- The glass hatch may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the glass hatch on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the glass hatch unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the glass hatch is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



- When closing the glass hatch, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught. Also pay attention to your personal belongings such as bags and ties.
- When closing the glass hatch, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface.

⚠ CAUTION

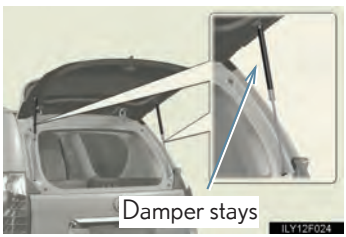
■ Operating the glass hatch

- Do not pull on the glass hatch damper stay to close the glass hatch, and do not hang on the glass hatch damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the glass hatch damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the glass hatch. Such additional weight on the glass hatch may cause the glass hatch to fall closed again after it is opened, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

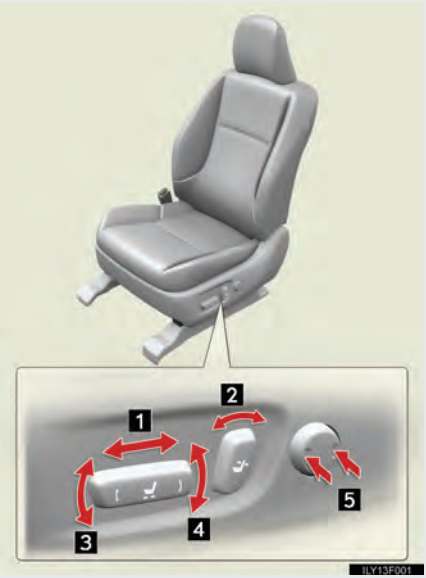
■ Glass hatch damper stays

The glass hatch is equipped with damper stays that hold the glass hatch in place. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the glass hatch damper stay, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the glass hatch.
- Do not place your hand or foot on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

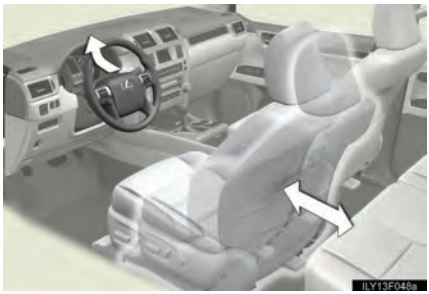
Front seats



1 Seat position adjustment switch
2 Seatback angle adjustment switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
4 Vertical height adjustment switch
5 Lumber support adjustment switch

Power easy access system

When the driver enters and exits the vehicle, the driver's seat and steering wheel will automatically perform the following operations:



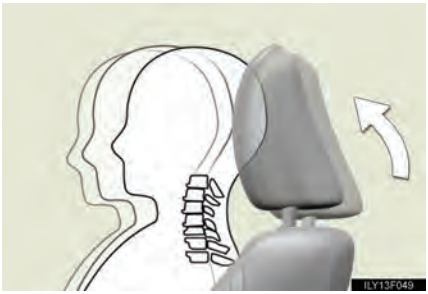
Exiting the vehicle: When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward (auto away function):

- The shift lever has been shifted to P
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off
- The driver seat belt has been unfastened

Entering the vehicle: When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward (auto return function):

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode
- The driver seat belt has been fastened

Active head restraints



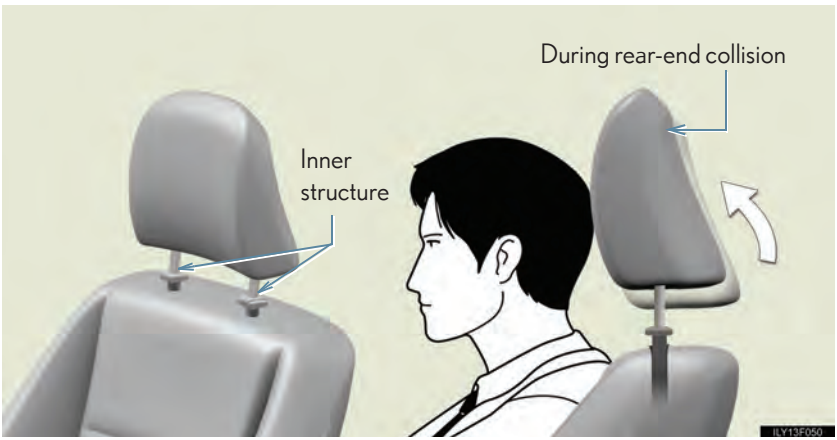
When the occupant's lower back presses against the seatback during a rear-end collision, the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash on the seat occupant.

The auto away function for exiting the driver seat

If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

Active head restraints

Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move. Pushing up a locked head restraint forcibly may appear the head restraint inner structure. These do not indicate problems.



Customization

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 782)

CAUTION

Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Second seats (without third seats)



Seatback angle adjustment lever

Second seats (with third seats)



1 Seatback angle adjustment lever
2 Seat position adjustment lever

Third seats (if equipped)



Seatback angle adjustment switch

Moving a second seat for third seat access (with third seats)

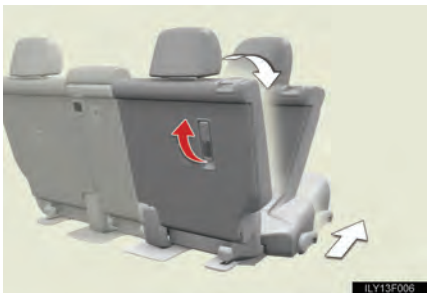
Getting in the vehicle (right side only)



Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and fold down the seatback. The seat will slide forward.

Move the seat to the front-most position

Getting out of the vehicle



Pull the release lever and fold down the seatback. The seat will slide forward.

Move the seat to the front-most position

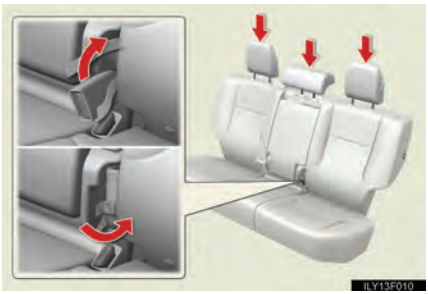
Make sure that no passenger is seated on the second seat before pulling the release lever.

After passengers have entered/exited the vehicle

Lift up the seatback and slide the seat backward until it locks.

Folding down the second seatbacks (without third seats)

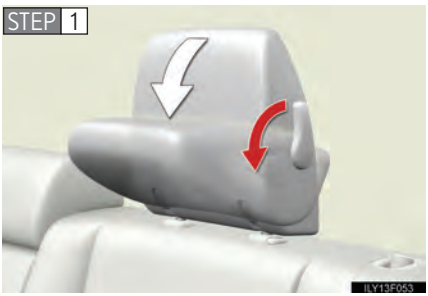
Before folding down the second seatbacks



Stow the center seat belt buckle with the hook-and-loop fastener and lower the head restraints to the lowest position.

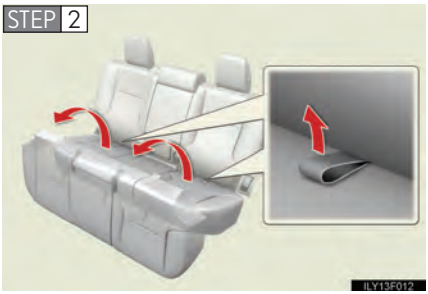
Folding down second seatbacks

STEP 1

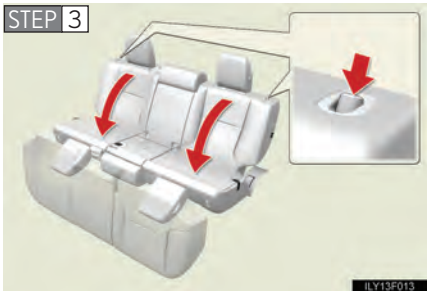


Pull the lever and fold down the outer seat head restraint.

STEP 2



Swing the bottom cushion up by pulling the lock release strap.

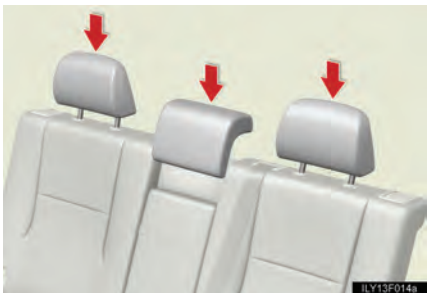


Push the seatback lock release button and fold them down.

To return the second seatbacks to their original positions, lift them up until they lock.

Folding down the second seatbacks (with third seats)

Before folding down the second seatbacks



Lower the head restraints to the lowest position.

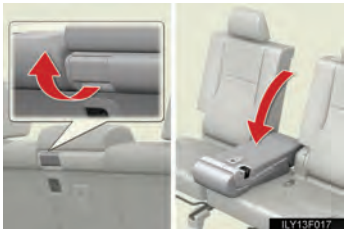
Folding down second seatbacks



Pull the seatback lock release lever and fold them down.

To return the second seatbacks to their original positions, lift them up until they lock.

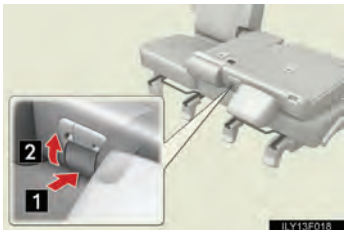
Folding down second center seatback only



Pull the center seatback lock release lever behind the seatback and fold it down.

To return the center seatback to its original position, lift it up until it locks.

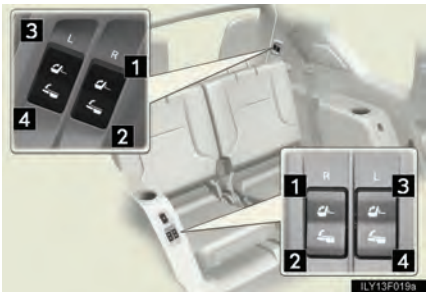
If you cannot raise the second seatback



Release the seat belt lock by:

1. Pushing on the lower front edge of the seatback to slacken the seat belt.
2. Let the seat belt retract a little.

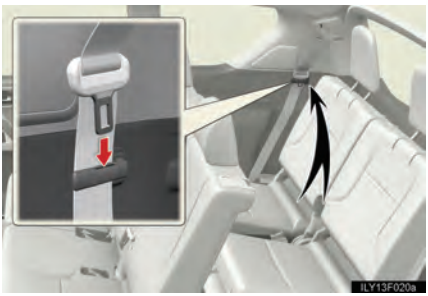
Folding down the third seats



1 R: Right seat return switch
2 R: Right seat fold switch
3 L: Left seat return switch
4 L: Left seat fold switch

The switches can be operated from both the rear door side and the back door side.

Before folding down the third seats



Use the seat belt hangers to prevent the belts from being tangled.

Folding down the third seats

STEP 1



Press and hold . Two beeps sound and the seatback will rise.

When operating is completed, two beeps sound again.

STEP 2



Press and hold  again. Two beeps sound, the head restraints will fold forward, and the seat will be stowed.

When operating is completed, two beeps sound again.

Returning the third seats

STEP 1



Press and hold .

Two beeps sound and seatback and seat cushion begin to move. When operating is completed, two beeps sound again.

STEP 2



Lift the head restraints up until they lock.

The third power seats can be operated when

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
- The shift lever is in P position with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode.

During third power seat stowing operation

Do not remove your hand from the switch until the operation stops automatically. If you remove your hand from the switch, the operation will stop and the buzzer will sound continuously. The seat cannot be used in this state. The buzzer will stop when the switch is pressed again.

Enlarging the luggage compartment (vehicles with third seats)

The third seat can be used for sitting when it is in the position shown in STEP 2 of the folding down the third seats. (→P. 72)
This can be convenient for enlarging the luggage compartment, for instance when the luggage is against the back of the seatback.

If the warning buzzer sounds continuously (vehicles with third seats)

If there is an abnormality in the system, the warning buzzer will sound continuously while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode. In this case, take the following operations:

STEP 1 Press and hold .

STEP 2 Press and hold  to stow the seat.

For each step, wait until the seat movement stops automatically and the two beeps sound twice before removing your hand from the switch.

If the warning buzzer does not stop even after performing the above procedure correctly, perform the following operations:

STEP 3 Press and hold  on the rear door side.

STEP 4 While holding , press forward on  5 times within 10 seconds and keep holding  until 3 beeps sound. The beep will then sound continuously again.

STEP 5 Repeat STEP 1 and STEP 2.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When folding the seatbacks down

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

■ Seat adjustment

- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Be careful not to get hands or feet pinched between the rear console box and the second seat when folding down the rear seatback.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When stowing the third seats

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check that there is no luggage and that there are no other people around the seat before stowing operation.
- Do not insert hands or feet into the moving parts of the seat.
- Do not allow children to operate the seat.

■ After returning the seatbacks to the upright position

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure the seatback is securely locked by pushing it forward and rearward on the top.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When returning the third seat (vehicles with a luggage cover)

If the luggage cover is installed in the luggage compartment, make sure you remove it before returning the third seat. (→P. 561) The luggage cover may be damaged by the seat.

Driving position memory (driver's seat)

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and angle of the outside rear view mirrors) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the driver's door is unlocked.

Two different driving positions can be entered into memory.

Entering a position into memory

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 4



While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button 1 or 2 until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

Recalling the memorized position

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3



Press button 1 or 2 to recall the desired position.

The buzzer will sound once.

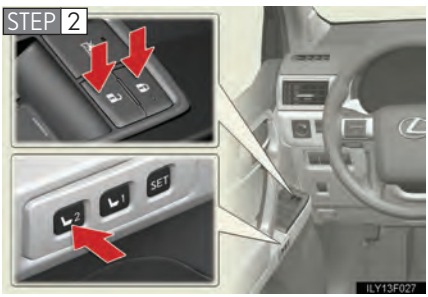
Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button 1 or 2 before performing the following:

Carry only the key to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and close the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button (1 or 2), press the driver's door lock switches (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine off**

Memorized positions (except the steering wheel position) can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again, even after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and close the driver's door.

STEP 2 While pressing "SET" button, press driver's door lock switches (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

■ **Stopping seat position operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button 1 or 2.
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).

CAUTION

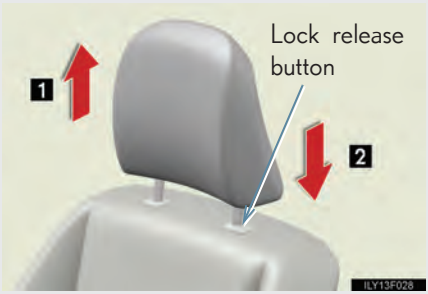
■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

Front and second seats



Vertical adjustment

1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

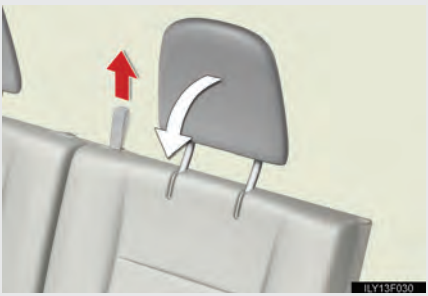
2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pushing the lock release button.



Angle adjustment (front seats only) (if equipped)

Third seats (if equipped)



To fold

Pull the lock release strap to fold the head restraint.

To return the head restraints, lift them up until they lock.

Adjusting the height of the head restraints



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

Using the second center seat head restraint



Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

Using the third seats

Always lift the head restraints up until they lock when using.

Removing the head restraints (front and second seats)



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

Installing the head restraints



Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

CAUTION

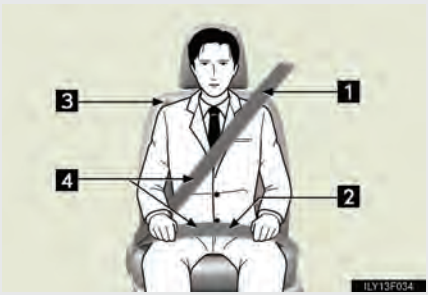
Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts



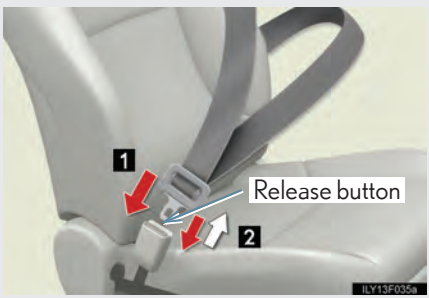
1 Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

2 Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.

3 Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

4 Do not twist the seat belt.

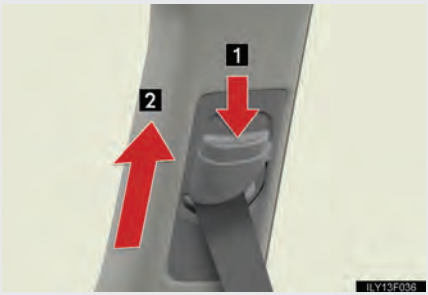
Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front and outer second seats)

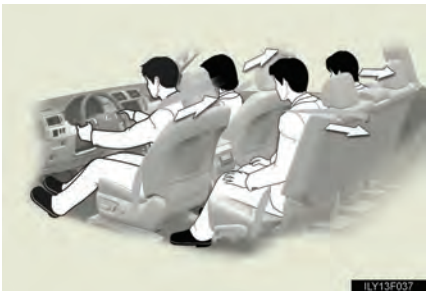


1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and outer second seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt, thus enhancing the effectiveness of the seat belt pretensioner in a crash.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 343)

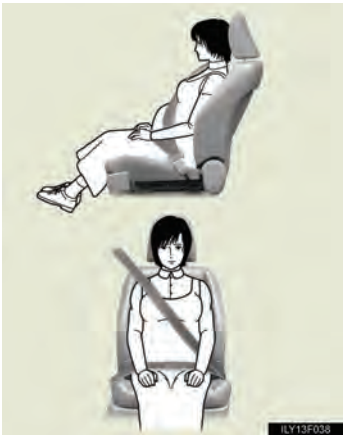
Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 151)

■ **Pregnant women**



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 85)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ **People suffering illness**

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 85)

■ **Child seat belt usage**

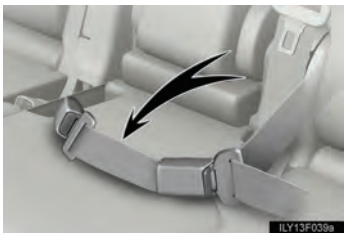
The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriately for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 146)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 85 regarding seat belt usage.

■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that should be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor form detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in a collision. (→P. 86)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of a seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Precaution for pre-collision seat belts

Do not rely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Away from the driver
4 Toward the driver

Auto tilt away



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

■ **The steering wheel can be adjusted when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P. 78)

⚠ CAUTION

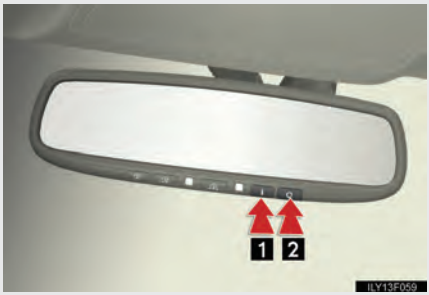
■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Inside rear view mirror

In automatic mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Without compass



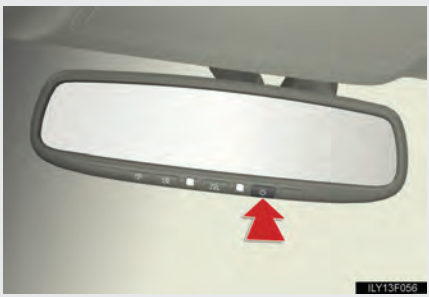
1 Turns automatic mode on

2 Turns automatic mode off

The indicator comes on when automatic mode is turned on.

The mirror reverts to automatic mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

With compass

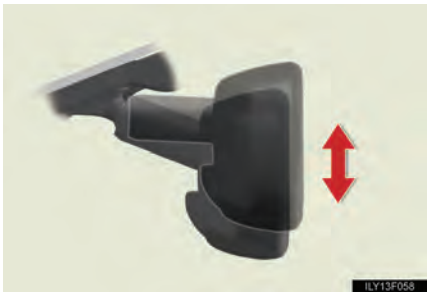


Turns automatic mode on/off

The indicator comes on when automatic mode is turned on.

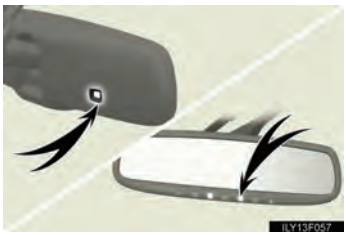
The mirror reverts to automatic mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

CAUTION

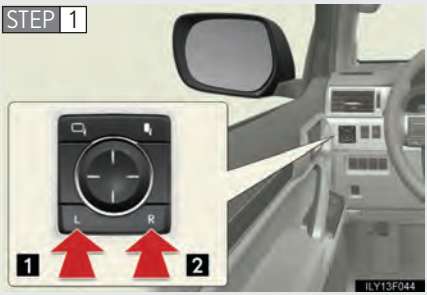
Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch.

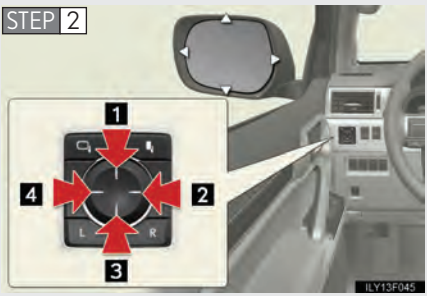
STEP 1



To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

1 Left
2 Right

STEP 2



To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

1 Up
2 Right
3 Down
4 Left

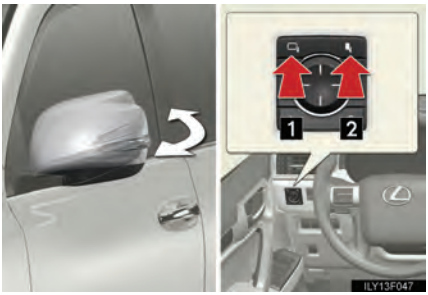
Folding the mirrors

Manual type



Push the mirror back in the direction of the vehicle's rear.

Auto type



1 Extends the mirrors
2 Folds the mirrors

■ **Mirror angle can be adjusted when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the mirrors are fogged up**

Turn on the mirror heaters to defog the mirrors. (→P. 411)

■ **Linked mirror function when reversing**

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 78)

■ **Auto anti-glare function (if equipped)**

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

⚠ NOTICE

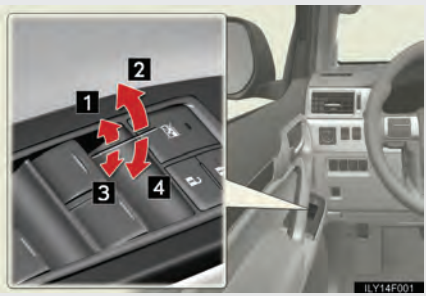
■ If ice should jam the mirror

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Window lock switch



Press the switch down to lock the passenger window switches.

The indicator will come on.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the power window switches on the driver's side even if the lock switch is on.

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the engine off**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **When the power window does not close normally**

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 739)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 47)

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 782)

⚠ CAUTION

Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

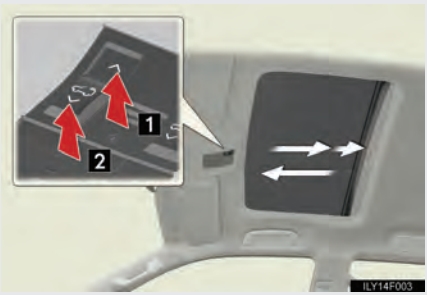
Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing



1 Opens the moon roof*

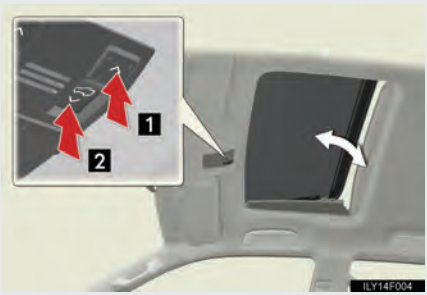
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down



1 Tilts the moon roof up*

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either of the roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Moon roof open reminder function**

An alarm will sound when the driver's door is opened with the moon roof not fully closed and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

■ **When the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∨" on the .*1

The moon roof will close, re-open and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" on the  *1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release "∧" on the  once and then press and hold "∧" on the  again.*1

The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold "∨" on the  or "∧" on the  and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 782)

CAUTION

Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

Opening the fuel tank cap

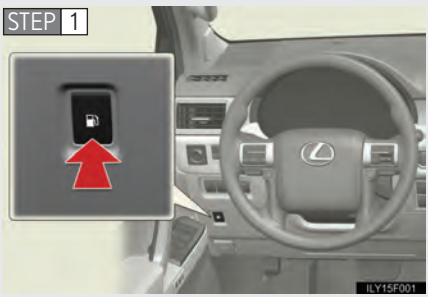
Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

Before refueling the vehicle

Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1



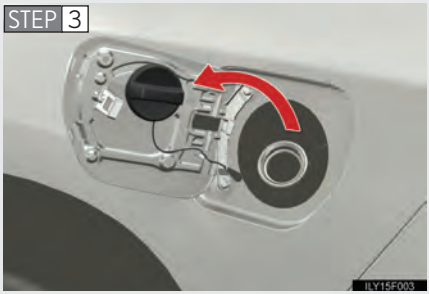
Press the opener to open the fuel filler door.

STEP 2



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3



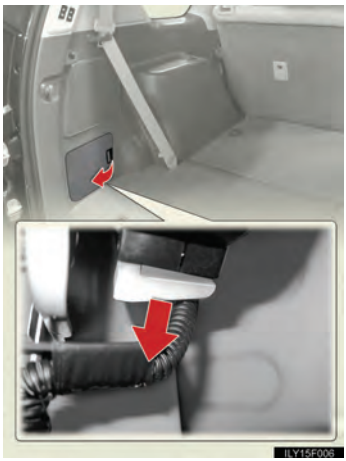
Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.

If the fuel filler door opener is inoperable



The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch.

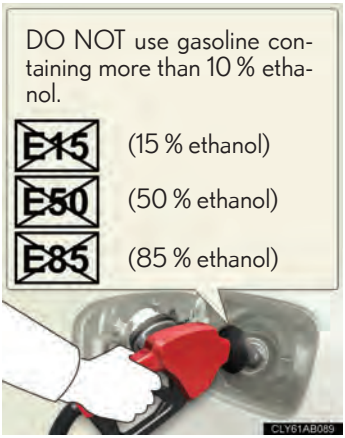
Fuel types

Use premium unleaded gasoline. (Octane Rating 91 [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 23.0 gal. (87 L, 19.1 Imp. gal.)

■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine



- Use only gasoline containing a maximum of 10 % ethanol.
  DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 10 % ethanol, including from any pump labeled E15, E30, E50, E85 (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 10 % ethanol).
- Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a suitable Research Octane Number. (→P. 766)

⚠ CAUTION

When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When refueling

Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck. If fuel is added with the nozzle slightly lifted away from the fuel filler neck, the automatic shut off function may not operate, resulting in fuel overflowing from the tank.

■ When replacing the fuel cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

Vehicles without a navigation system



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

Vehicles with a navigation system



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type of engine immobilizer system.

Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object.
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

CAUTION

Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forced entry is detected.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or glass hatch is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.

Setting the alarm system

Vehicles without a navigation system



Close the doors, glass hatch and hood, and lock all the doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Vehicles with a navigation system



Close the doors, glass hatch and hood, and lock all the doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarms:

- Unlock the doors.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

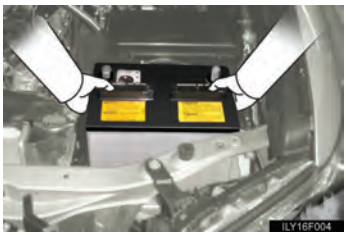
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

Alarm memory function

After the alarm is activated, when you unlock any door using a entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key, the tail lights turn on for about 2 seconds to inform you that the system was activated.

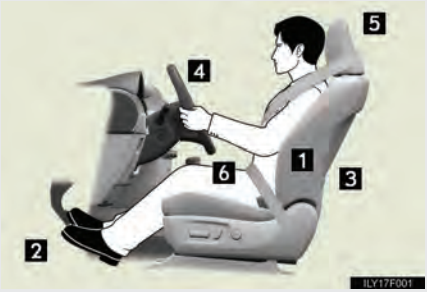
⚠ NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 63)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 63)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 93)
5. Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 82)
6. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 85)

⚠ CAUTION

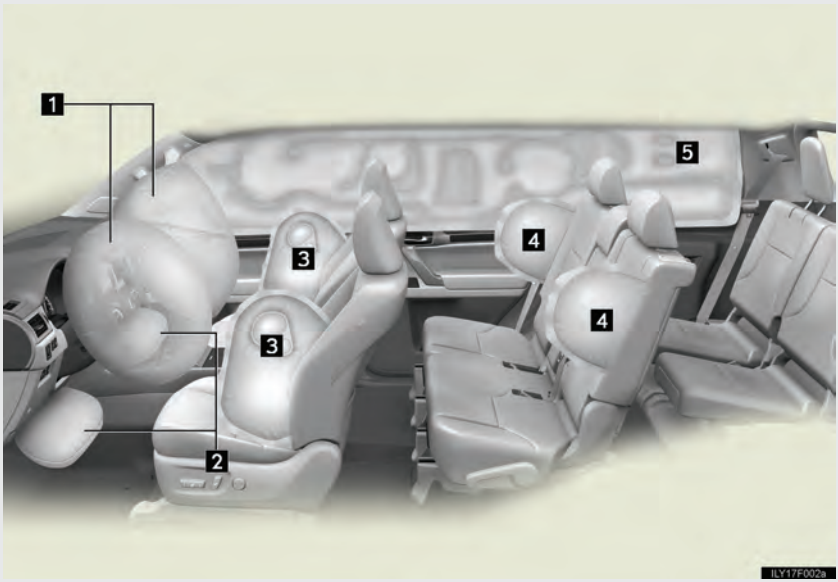
■ While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

■ Adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



SRS front airbags

1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

2 SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

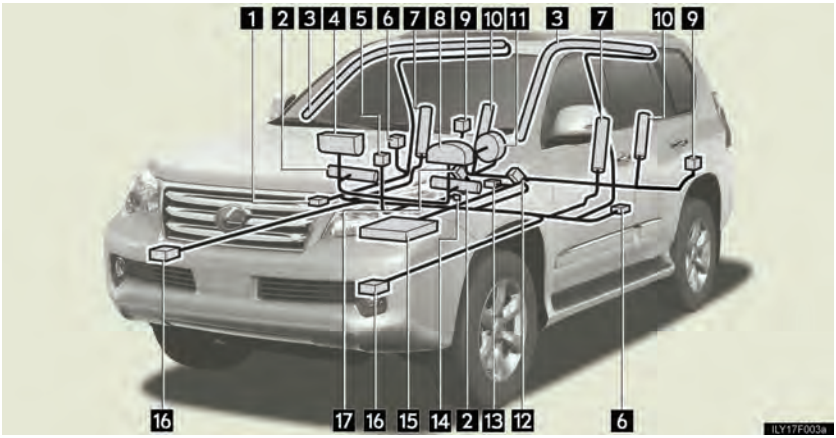
SRS side and curtain shield airbags

3 Front SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

4 Rear SRS side airbags (if equipped)
Can help protect the torso of the outer second seat occupants

5 SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

SRS airbag system components



1 Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)
2 Knee airbag
3 Curtain shield airbag
4 Front passenger airbag
5 "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
6 Side and curtain shield airbag sensor
7 Front side airbag
8 SRS warning light and "RSCA OFF" indicator light
9 Rear side (if equipped) and curtain shield airbag sensor
10 Rear side airbag (outer second seat) (if equipped)
11 Driver airbag
12 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
13 Floor sensor
14 "RSCA OFF" switch
15 Airbag sensor assembly
16 Front airbag sensor
17 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on the US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver's seat belt buckle switch etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and a main sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts or a vehicle rollover, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front, center and rear pillars and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 580)

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbag will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

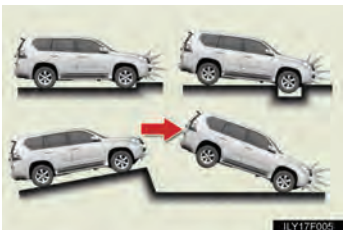
  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front airbags for the front passenger will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the SRS front airbags for the front passenger may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 139)

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3307 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).
- The SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of vehicle rollover.

■ **Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision**

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling

The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.



- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits a curb stone.

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

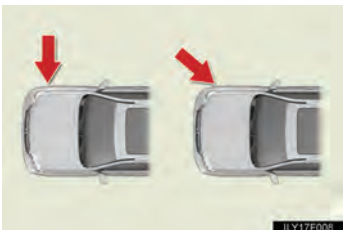
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



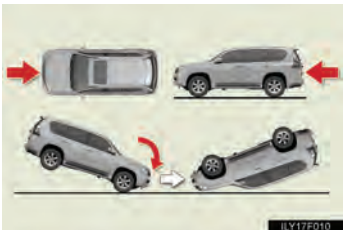
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

The SRS curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it pitches end over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

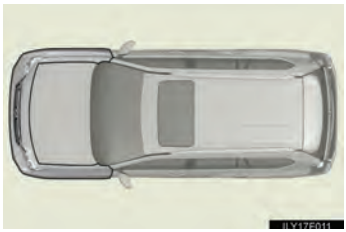


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Pitches end over end

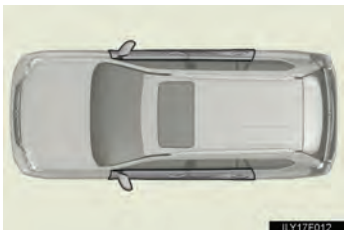
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, center pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) advises:

  Since the risk zone for driver's airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the front seat belt buckles but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the seat belt, the SRS front airbags system will judge that the driver and front passenger are wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the SRS front airbags may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 146)

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, center and rear pillars.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front, center or rear pillars, roof side rail and assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.

⚠ CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front, center and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, center and rear pillars or roof side rail
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars or kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

Deactivating the curtain shield airbags in a vehicle rollover



ON/OFF (Hold for a few seconds)

The "RSCA OFF" indicator light turns on. (only when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

The roll sensing function for the curtain shield airbags and seat belt pretensioners will turn back on automatically each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

■ **The switch only should be used**

In a situation where inflation is not desired (such as during extreme off-road driving).

■ **Operating conditions when the "RSCA OFF" indicator is on**

- The curtain shield airbag and seat belt pretensioner will not activate in a vehicle rollover.
- The curtain shield airbag will activate in a severe side impact.
- The seat belt pretensioner will activate in a severe frontal or side collision.

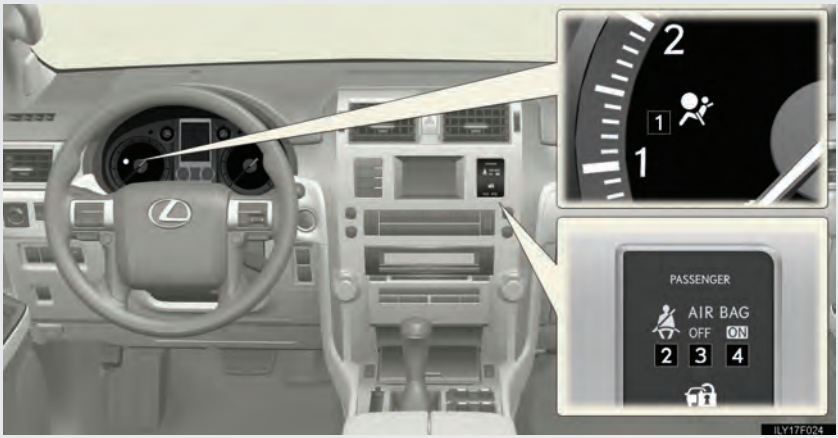
⚠ CAUTION

■ **For normal driving**

Make sure the "RSCA OFF" indicator light is not turned on. If it is left on, the curtain shield airbag will not activate in the event of an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for the front passenger.



1 SRS warning light
2 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
3 "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
4 "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

Child*3 or child restraint system*4

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"*5
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the front passenger seat	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*3: When a large child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.

*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 151)

*5: In case the indicator light is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 146)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt plate has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, and reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and front passenger knee airbag may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. seatback pocket).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the second seat.
- Do not let a second seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a second seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the second seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the second seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 151)
- Do not modify or remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the second seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion and seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

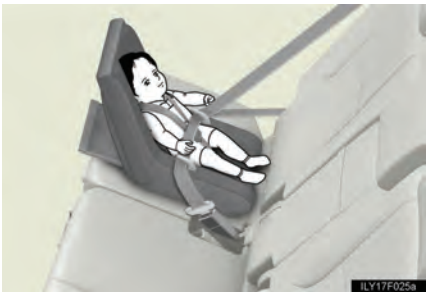
Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
  (→P. 151)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child;

Rear facing—Infant seat/convertible seat



Forward facing—Convertible seat



Booster seat



■ **Selecting an appropriate child restraint system**

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 85)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Child restraint precautions**

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front, center and rear pillars or roof side rail from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.



Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the right side second seat and between the center and left side second seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



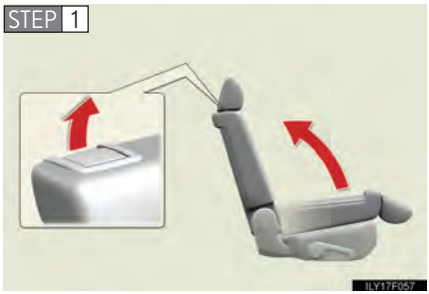
Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 87)



Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

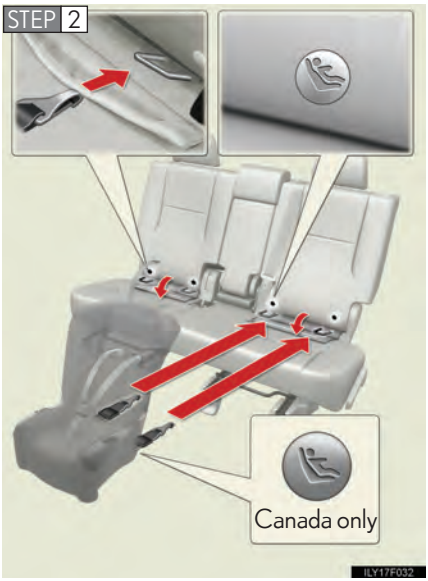
Anchor brackets are provided for each second seats.

Installation with LATCH system



Fold the seatback forward. Then return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position (most upright position). (→P. 67)

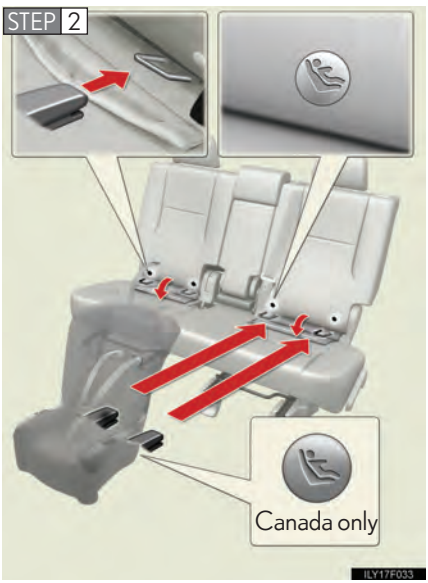
Type A



Flip the cover (vehicles with third seats), and latch the hooks of lower straps onto the LATCH anchors. If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 160)

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower anchorage system.

Type B



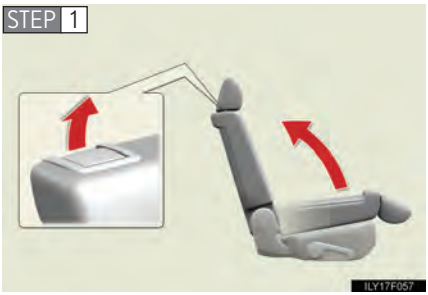
Flip the cover (vehicles with third seats), and latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors. If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 160)

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower anchorage system.

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

STEP 1



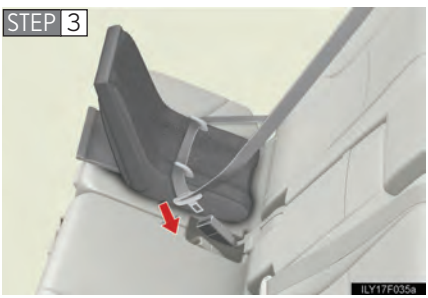
Fold the seatback forward. Then return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position (most upright position). (→P. 67)

STEP 2

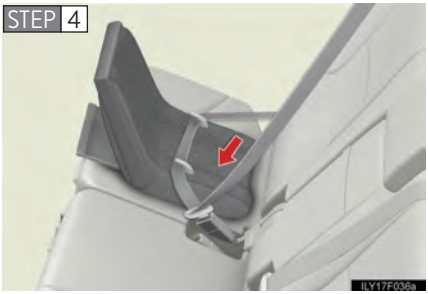


Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

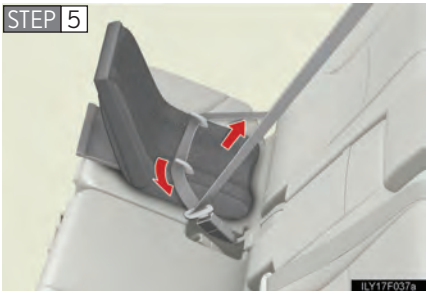
STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

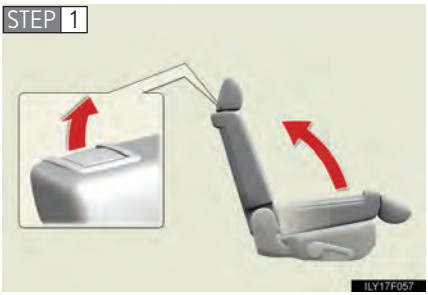


While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Forward facing — Convertible seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback forward. Then return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position (most upright position). (→P. 67)

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 4



Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

STEP 5



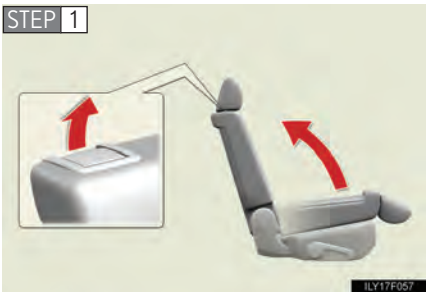
While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 6 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 160)

Booster seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback forward. Then return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position (most upright position). (→P. 67)

STEP 2



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 85)

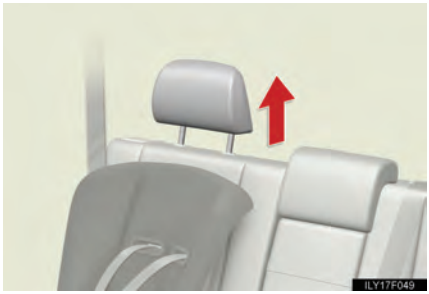
Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



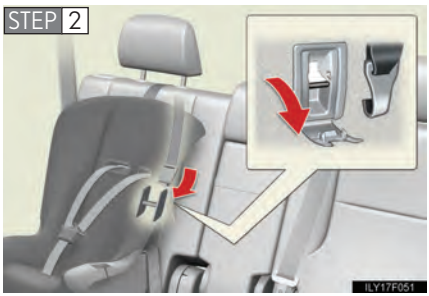
Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

STEP 1 Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or the LATCH anchors, and do the following.



Move the head restraint in place at the upmost position.



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.
Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

CAUTION

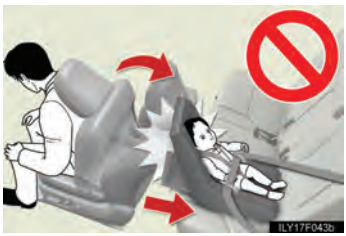
When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only. This could cause injury or discomfort to the child. (→P. 87)

⚠ CAUTION

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand second seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Child restraint system installed on the third seat should not contact the second seatbacks.



- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

- When installing a child restraint system in the second center seat, adjust both seatbacks at the same angle.
- When using the LATCH anchors for a child restraint system, move the seat as far back as possible, with the seatback close to the child restraint system.
- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

- When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.



- When using the left side LATCH anchors for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center seat.
  Seat belt function may be impaired, such as being positioned overly high or loose-fitting, which may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 168
Engine (ignition) switch 179
Automatic transmission..... 186
Turn signal lever..... 192
Parking brake..... 193
Horn..... 194

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters..... 195
Indicators and warning lights..... 198
Multi-information display (Optitron meters) 204
Multi-information display (Accessory meters)..... 212

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch 219
Automatic High Beam 226
Fog light switch..... 233
Windshield wipers and washer 236
Rear window wiper and washer 242
Headlight cleaner switch 245

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 246
Dynamic radar cruise control 250
Intuitive parking assist 266
LDA (Lane Departure Alert)..... 275
Rear view monitor system 281
Wide view front & side monitor 286
Multi-terrain Select 296
Multi-terrain Monitor..... 304
Rear height control air suspension 316
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)..... 321
Four-wheel drive system 322
Crawl Control..... 328
DAC (Downhill Assist Control system) 332
Driving assist systems 335
PCS (Pre-Collision System)..... 343

2-5. Driving information

Off-road precautions 353
Cargo and luggage 358
Vehicle load limits..... 364
Winter driving tips..... 366
Trailer towing 370
Dinghy towing..... 389

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the engine

→P. 179

Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 186)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 193)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 186)

Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 193)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 186)

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

STEP 4 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.

Starting off on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 200 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 500 miles (800 km):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 600 miles (1000 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Drum-in-disc type parking brake system**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 754)

■ **Eco-friendly driving**



If Eco Driving Indicator Light comes on, it indicates that you are driving at an Eco-friendly driving. In case of over-use of the accelerator that cause the vehicle to exceed the Zone of Eco driving, Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

The Eco Driving Indicator Light will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever in anything other than D.
- The vehicle is set to second start mode. (→P. 188)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 81 mph (130 km/h) or higher.

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed.
  Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to D while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- During normal driving, do not tune off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 749
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 187)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

When driving the vehicle

- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine. Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ CAUTION

Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust system should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off.
Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance will increase.
  If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

■ While driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

⚠ NOTICE

Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering pump.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 721)

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator will turn green. If the indicator does not turn green, the engine cannot be started.

STEP 4



Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 25 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

Stopping the engine

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 193)

STEP 4 Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

STEP 5 Release the brake pedal and check that the indicator on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is off.

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF.

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is illuminated in amber and then press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch once.

STEP 4 Check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.

Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

Operation of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch

When operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 44

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 39

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P. 41

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 115)

■ **Steering lock**

After turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**



The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 644

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Caution while driving**

If the vehicle begins to slide due to engine failure or other circumstances, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 3 seconds. However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is illuminated, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately.

Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch

If the "ENGINE START STOP" seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever



While the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

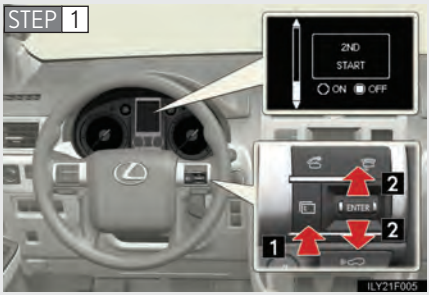
Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
S	S mode driving*2 (→P. 189)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the D position for normal driving.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using S mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

Selecting second start mode

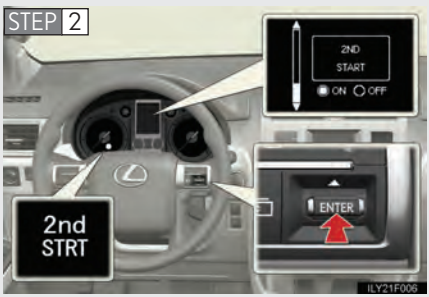
Use second start mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.



1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards until "2ND START" appears.



Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".
The "2nd STRT" indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns second start mode on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

Changing shift ranges in S mode

When the shift lever is in the S position, the shift lever can be operated as follows:



1 For upshifting
2 For downshifting

The initial shift range in S mode is set automatically to 5 or 4 according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to 3 or 2 if AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the D position.
(→P. 190)

Shift ranges and their functions

- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.

■ **S mode**

When the shift range is 5 or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to 6.

■ **AI-SHIFT**

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the optimal gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position cancels the function.)

The engine speed remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **When driving with the cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control**

Engine braking will not occur in S mode, even when downshifting to 5 or 4.
(→P. 246, 250)

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

→P. 737

■ **If the "S" indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to S**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

■ **Downshift restriction warning buzzer (S mode)**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

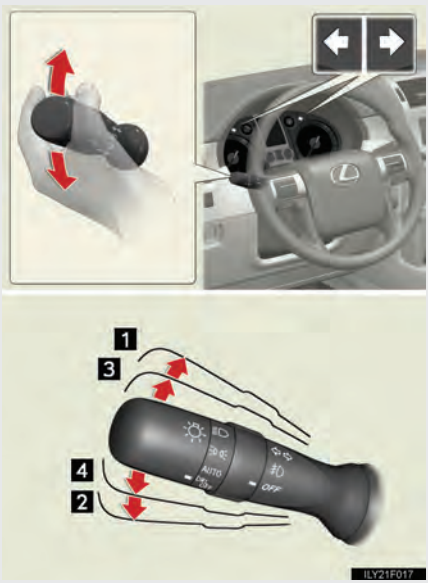
⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift gears suddenly. Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

Turn signal lever

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intentions of the driver:



1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Lane change to the right (push and hold the lever partway)

The right hand signals will flash until you release the lever.

4 Lane change to the left (push and hold the lever partway)

The left hand signals will flash until you release the lever.

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicators flash faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

Parking brake



To set the parking brake, fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

Usage in winter time

See "Winter driving tips" for parking brake usage in winter time. (→P. 366)

NOTICE

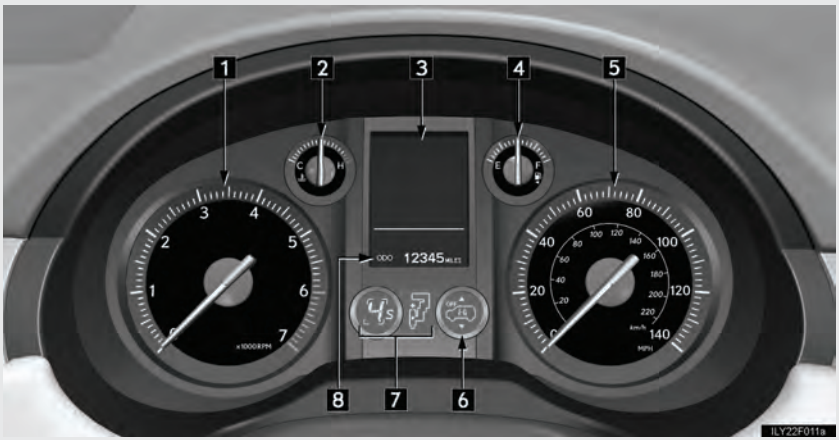
Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



1 Tachometer
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

2 Engine coolant temperature gauge
Displays the engine coolant temperature.

3 Multi-information display
→P. 204

4 Fuel gauge
Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

5 Speedometer
Displays the vehicle speed.

6 Rear height control air suspension display (if equipped)
→P. 316

7 Shift position and shift range display
→P. 186

8 Odometer and trip meter display

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Changing the display



Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.

Instrument cluster light control switch

The brightness of the instrument cluster lights can be adjusted.



1 Brighter

2 Darker

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Instrument cluster brightness adjustment**

The instrument cluster brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted.

■ **The brightness of the instrument cluster lights**

When the tail lights are on, the brightness will change. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.) turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument cluster brightness.
In addition, the brightness of the instrument cluster lights is automatically adjusted based on the light sensor detecting how bright the surroundings are.

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The trip meter data will be reset.
If the trip meter was displayed last, the ODO screen will be displayed after resetting.

■ **Customization**

Setting of sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 782)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 744)

The indicators and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

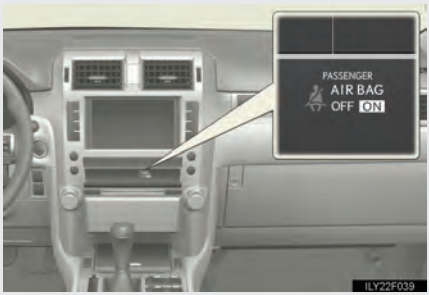
Instrument cluster



Center panel (vehicles without a navigation system)



Center panel (vehicles with a navigation system)



Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator (→P. 192)



Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 219)



(U.S.A.)

Headlight indicator (→P. 219)



(Canada)

Tail light indicator (→P. 219)

*1



(if equipped)

Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 226)



Fog light indicator (→P. 233)

*1



Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 210)



Cruise control indicator (→P. 246, 250)



"SET" indicator (→P. 246, 250)



(if equipped)

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator (→P. 250)



(if equipped)

"LDA" indicator (→P. 275)

*1, 2



Slip indicator (→P. 337)

*1



VSC OFF indicator (→P. 338)



(if equipped)

Multi-terrain Select indicator (→P. 296)


*1 (if equipped)
Crawl Control indicator (→P. 328)


*1 (if equipped)
Downhill assist control system indicator (→P. 332)



"2nd STRT" indicator (→P. 188)



Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light (→P. 322)


Center differential lock indicator (→P. 323)



AIR BAG ON/OFF indicator (→P. 139)


(if equipped)
Intuitive parking assist indicator (→P. 266)



*1 (if equipped)
"AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 223)



*1
"RSCA OFF" indicator (→P. 137)



*1, 3 (if equipped)
"PCS" warning (→P. 343)

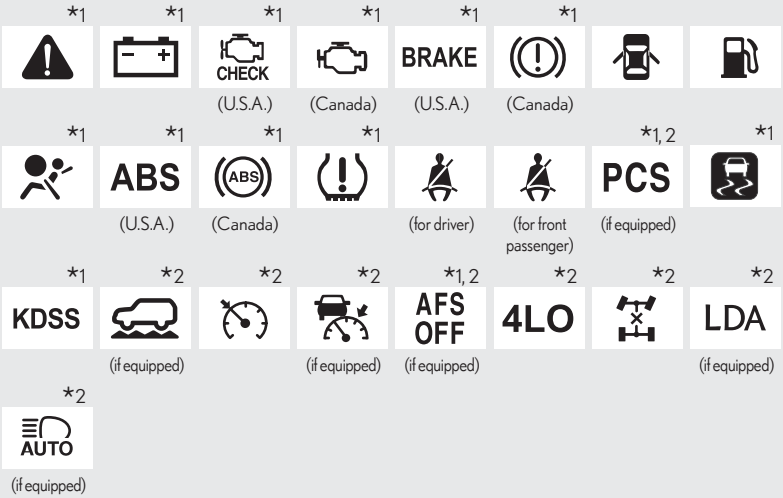
*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when pre-collision braking is disabled. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems. (→P. 688, 700)



*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

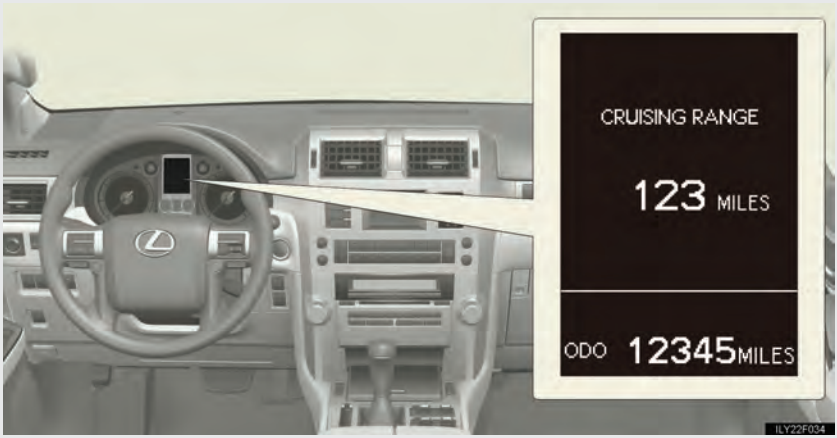
⚠ CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS/Multi Terrain ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Multi-information display (Optitron meters)

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.



- Trip information contents (→P. 205)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising-related information.

- Electronic features control contents (→P. 208)
- Other contents (→P. 208)

Switching the display



1 Menu switch

Changes modes to electronic features control mode, customization mode or back to normal display mode.

2 "ENTER" switch

Changes trip information items. This switch is also used to turn on/off electronic features controls and to change customization settings.

Display items

Trip information contents

Trip information items displayed can be switched by pressing the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards.

● Outside temperature display



Displays the outside temperature

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40 °F (-40 °C) to 122 °F (50 °C).

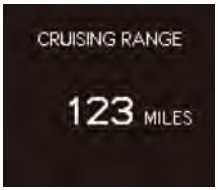
● Front tire angle



The direction of the front tires is displayed

The tire direction is displayed in 3 stages for both left and right, in accordance with the angle of the tire.

● Driving range



Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
- When refueling, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, the display may not be updated.

● Average fuel consumption after refueling



Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

● Current fuel consumption



Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

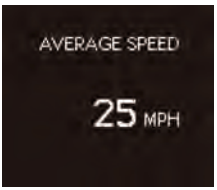
● Average fuel consumption and Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display (→P. 210)



Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pressing the "ENTER" switch for longer than 1 second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

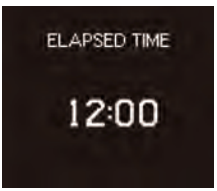
● Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started or the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "ENTER" switch for longer than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

● Elapsed time



Displays the elapsed time since the function was last reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "ENTER" switch for longer than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

● Display off

A blank screen is displayed

■ **Electronic features control contents**

- Multi-terrain Select (if equipped) (→P. 296)
- Intuitive parking assist (if equipped) (→P. 266)
- AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) (if equipped) (→P. 223)
- Second start mode (→P. 188)

■ **Other contents**

- Multi-terrain Select display (if equipped) (→P. 296)
- Intuitive parking assist display* (if equipped) (→P. 266)
- Crawl Control display* (if equipped) (→P. 328)
- Dynamic radar cruise control display* (if equipped) (→P. 250)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) display* (if equipped) (→P. 275)
- Warning messages (→P. 700)

  Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicles systems.

- Customization

  Settings (e.g.available language) can be changed.
  (Customizable features →P. 782)

*: Automatically displayed when the system is used

■ **Electronic features control can be turned on/off when**

"ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **System check display**

After turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, "CHECKING" is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

■ **Conditions for ending electronic features control**

In the following situations, the electronic features control will end automatically:

- The menu switch is pressed
- Intuitive parking assist display starts operating
- The Crawl Control is operated
- The dynamic radar cruise control is operated
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) is operated
- A warning message appears after the electronic features control screen is displayed

Eco Driving Indicator



1 Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.

2 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

3 Zone of Eco driving

4 Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If the vehicle exceeds Zone of Eco driving, the right side of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will blink and Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

The Eco Driving Indicator Light will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever in anything other than D.
- The vehicle is set to second start mode. (→P. 188)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 81 mph (130 km/h) or higher.

Outside temperature display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:

- When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

When "--" or "E" is displayed

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle Lexus dealer.

When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The following information data will be reset:

- Average fuel consumption after refueling
- Average fuel consumption
- Average vehicle speed
- Elapsed time

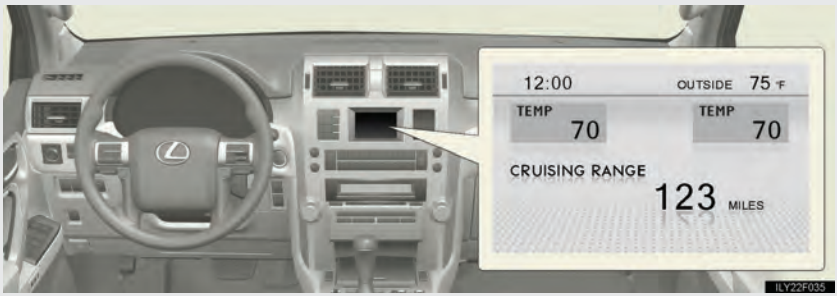
CAUTION

The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Multi-information display (Accessory meters)*

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data including the current outside air temperature.



- Clock (→P. 540)

  Indicates the time.

- Outside temperature

  Indicates the outside temperature.
  The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40 °F (-40 °C) to 122 °F (50 °C).

- Air conditioning system display (→P. 392)

- Rear view monitor (→P. 281)

  Automatically displayed when the shift lever is moved into R.

- Multi-terrain Monitor (if equipped) (→P. 304)

- Wide view front & side monitor (if equipped) (→P. 286)

- Trip information (→P. 213)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising-related information.

- Intuitive parking assist display (if equipped) (→P. 266)

*: If equipped

Switching the display

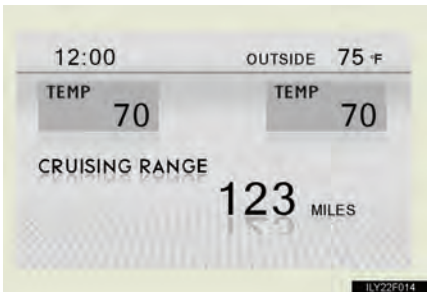


Items displayed can be switched by pressing the "MODE" switch.

1 "MODE" switch
2 "RESET" switch
3 "DISP" switch
4 Display adjustment switch

Display items

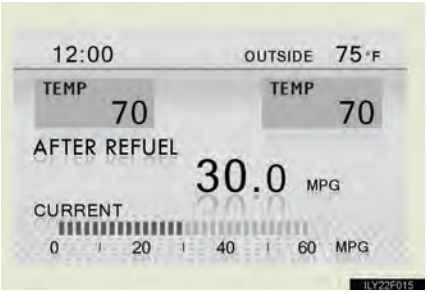
Driving range



Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
- When refueling, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, the display may not be updated.

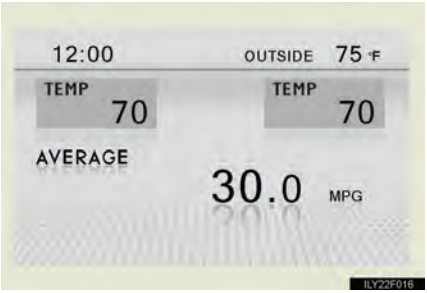
Average fuel consumption after refueling and current fuel consumption



Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled and the current rate of fuel consumption

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

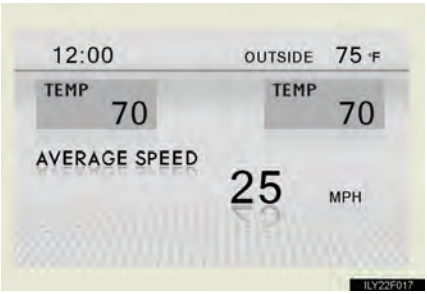
Average fuel consumption



Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pressing and holding the "RESET" switch when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing and holding the "RESET" switch when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

Elapsed time



Displays the elapsed time since the function was last reset

The function can be reset by pressing and holding the "RESET" switch when the elapsed time is displayed.

Air conditioning system display

→P. 392

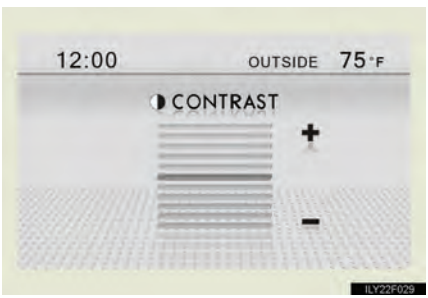
Setting up the display

Setting up the information display

To set up the display, press the "DISP" switch until the desired item appears.

If left idle for approximately 10 seconds, the display will revert to the previous screen.

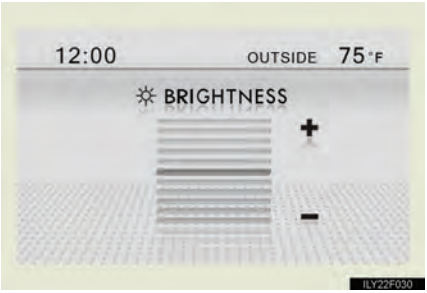
● Setting the contrast



Press the display adjustment switch ("∧" or "∨") to adjust the contrast.

+: Strengthen
-: Weaken

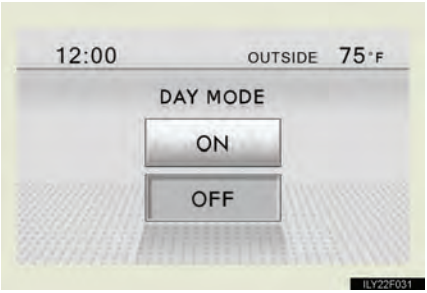
● Setting the brightness



Press the display adjustment switch (“∧” or “∨”) to adjust the brightness.

+: Brighter
-: Darker

● Setting the day mode



Press the display adjustment switch (“∧” or “∨”) to select ON or OFF.

Setting up the display of the monitors

To set up the display, press the "DISP" switch when the camera image is being displayed until the desired item appears.

If left idle for approximately 10 seconds, the display will revert to the previous screen.

● Setting the contrast



Press the display adjustment switch ("∧" or "∨") to adjust the contrast.

+: Strengthen
-: Weaken

● Setting the brightness



Press the display adjustment switch ("∧" or "∨") to adjust the brightness.

+: Brighter
-: Darker

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ **Outside temperature display**

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ **When "--" or "E" is displayed on the outside temperature display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The following information data and settings will be reset:

- Average fuel consumption after refueling
- Average fuel consumption
- Average vehicle speed
- Elapsed time

■ **Customization**

Setting of available languages can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 782)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **The multi-information display at low temperatures**

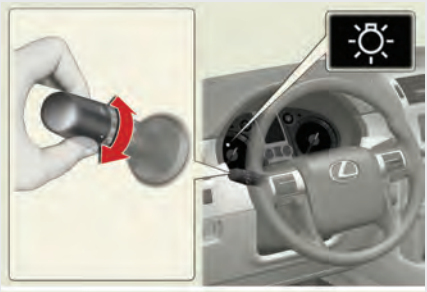
Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

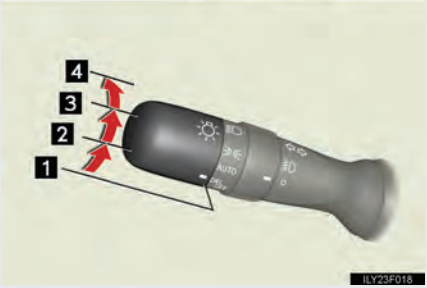
Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:

Type A





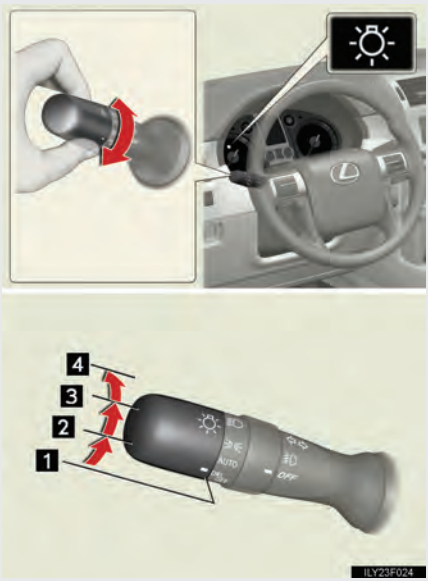
1 DRL OFF The daytime running lights turn off.

2 AUTO The headlights, parking lights and so on turn on and off automatically (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

3 The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

4 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

Type B



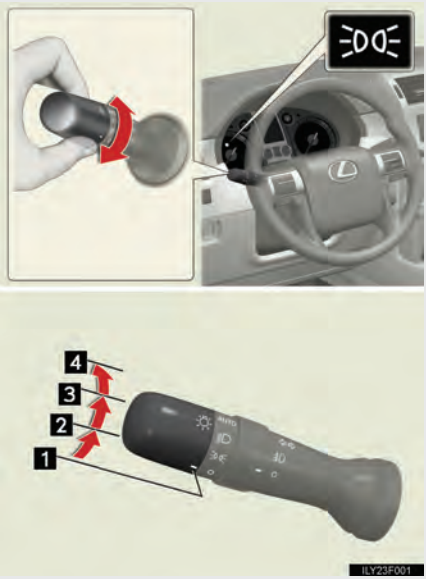
1 DRL OFF The daytime running lights turn off.

2 AUTO The headlights, parking lights and so on turn on and off automatically (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

3 The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

4 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

Type C



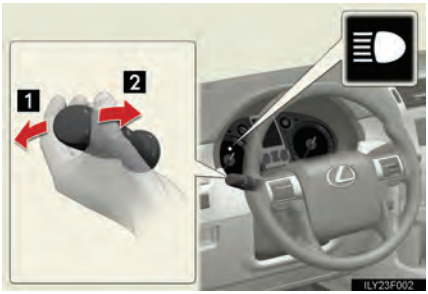
1 O The daytime running lights turn on.

2 The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

3 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

4 AUTO The headlights, parking lights and so on turn on and off automatically (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

When the light switch is in "AUTO" position, the Automatic High Beam system will be activated. (→P. 226)

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

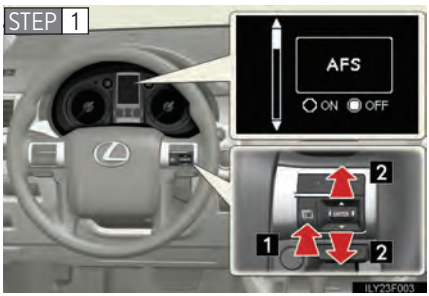
You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) (if equipped)

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) secures excellent visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire's angle as controlled by steering input.

AFS operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

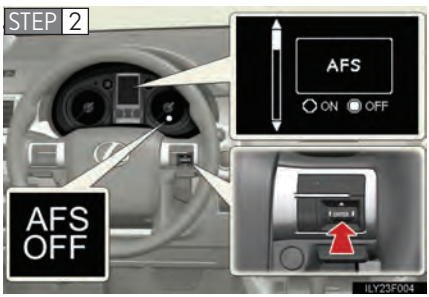
Deactivating AFS



1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards until "AFS" appears.



Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "OFF".
The "AFS OFF" indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns "AFS" on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

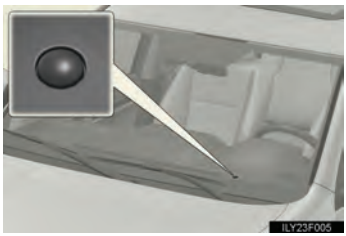
■ **Daytime running light system**

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

  For the U.S.A.: Daytime running lights can be turned off by operating the switch.

- Compared to the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help fuel economy.

■ **Headlight control sensor**



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ **Automatic light off system**

- When only the tail lights come on: The parking/front side marker, tail, license plate and fog lights turn off if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off and the driver's door is opened.
- When the headlights come on: The headlights, parking/front side marker, tail, license plate and fog lights turn off 30 seconds after a door or the glass hatch is opened and closed. (The lights turn off immediately if on the key is pressed after all the doors are locked.)

To turn the lights on again, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system (if equipped)**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **If the "AFS OFF" indicator flashes (if equipped)**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 782)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

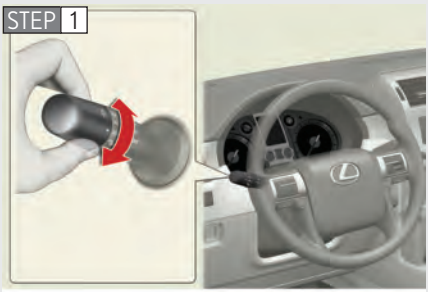
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

STEP 1



Turn the headlight switch to the "AUTO" position.



STEP 2



Push the lever away from you.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.

*: If equipped

Turning the high beam on/off manually

Switching to low beam



Pull the lever to original position.

Switching to high beam



Turn the light switch to  position.

High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 20 mph (32 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 20 mph (32 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.

■ **Limitations of the Automatic High Beam**

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve.
  - When another vehicle cuts across in front of you.
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- Houselights, streetlights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - Road conditions (wetness, ice, snow etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of baggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.

- In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beam on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.
  - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
  - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
  - The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
  - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or are not aimed properly.
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.)
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
  - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
  - The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
  - The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
  - The Automatic High Beam indicator is flashing.
  - The high beam and low beam are repeatedly being switched between in an abnormal manner.
  - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

■ **If the Automatic High Beam indicator flashes...**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Temporary lowering sensor sensitivity**

The sensitivity of the sensor can be temporarily lowered.
To lower the sensitivity, push and hold the "AUTO" button on the inside rear view mirror for 15 to 20 seconds, and release. The indicator light on the inside rear view mirror will flash to indicate that the sensitivity has been lowered.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the sensitivity will be returned to its normal level.

■ **Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer**

The Automatic High Beam can be turned off.

⚠ NOTICE

Camera sensor



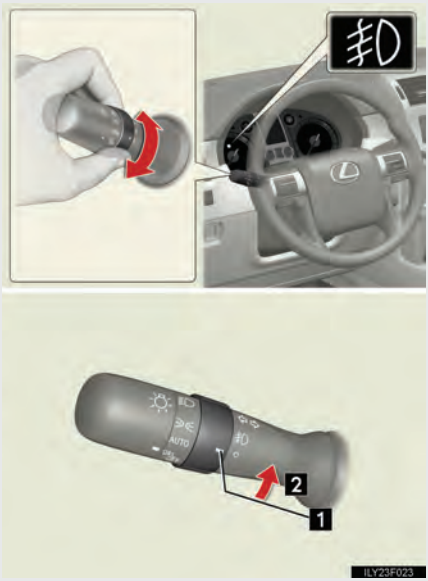
Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the inside rear view mirror and the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with a non-genuine windshield.
  Contact your Lexus dealer.

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog.

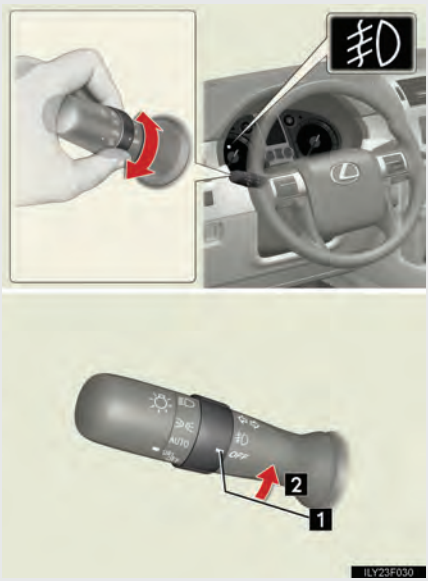
Type A



1 ○ Turns the fog lights off

2 Turns the fog lights on

Type B



1 OFF Turns the fog lights off

2 Turns the fog lights on

Type C



1 O Turns the fog lights off

2 Turns the fog lights on

■ **Fog lights can be used when**

The head lights are on in low beam.

⚠ NOTICE

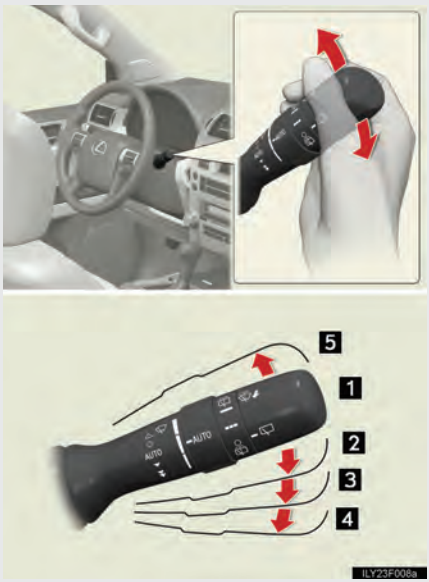
■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

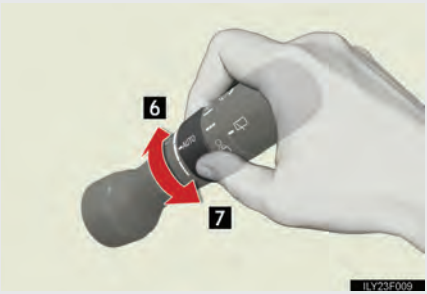
When "AUTO" is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing according to rain volume and vehicle speed.

When "AUTO" is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted as follows by turning the switch ring:

Type A



1. ○ Off
2. AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation
3. ▼ Low speed wiper operation
4. ▼▼ High speed wiper operation
5. △ Temporary operation



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



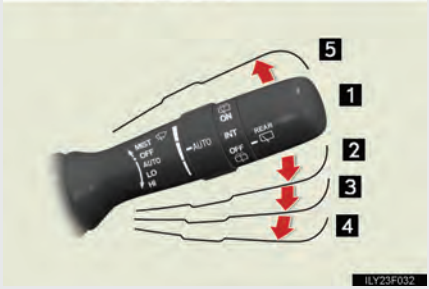
8 Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

Vehicles with the headlight cleaners: If the headlights are on, the headlight cleaners will operate once.

Type B





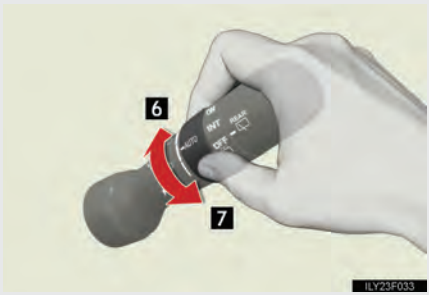
1 OFF Off

2 AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation

3 LO Low speed wiper operation

4 HI High speed wiper operation

5 MIST Temporary operation



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)
Vehicles with the headlight cleaners: If the headlights are on, the headlight cleaners will operate once.

■ **The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Rain drop sensor**



- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.
- If the wiper switch is turned to the "AUTO" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that "AUTO" mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the rain drop sensor is 194 °F (90 °C) or higher, or 5 °F (-15 °C) or lower, the automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO".

Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

With the settings other than "AUTO" also, the time until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs is changed depending on vehicle speed.

Type A

With ▼ selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

Type B

With LO selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers etc. anything else does not become caught in the windshield wipers.

NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

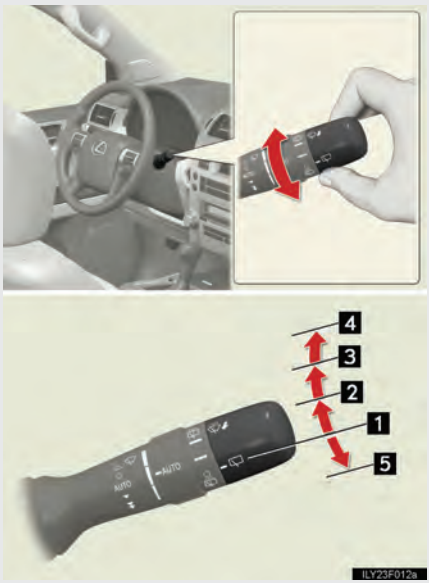
■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Rear window wiper and washer

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows:

Type A



1 ○ Off

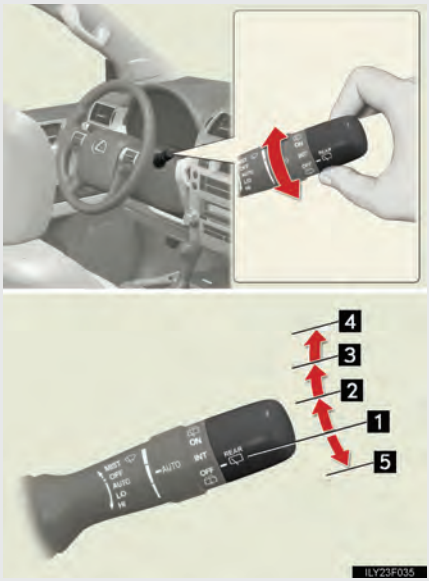
2 - - - Intermittent window wiper operation

3 — Normal window wiper operation

4 Washer/wiper dual operation

5 Washer/wiper dual operation

Type B



1 OFF Off

2 INT Intermittent window wiper operation

3 ON Normal window wiper operation

4 Washer/wiper dual operation

5 Washer/wiper dual operation

■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The glass hatch is closed.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

Headlight cleaner switch*

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

■ **The headlight cleaners can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

■ **Windshield washer linked operation**

When the windshield washer is operated with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaners will operate once. (→P. 236)

⚠ NOTICE

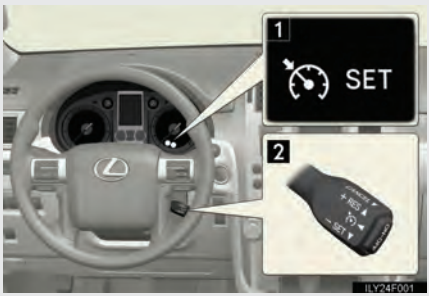
■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not press the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

*: If equipped

Cruise control*

Use cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.



1 Indicators
2 Cruise control switch

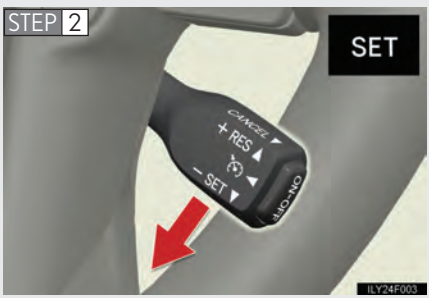
Setting the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



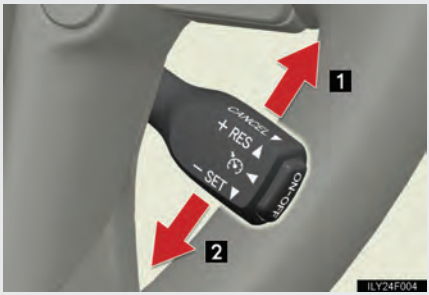
Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the set speed



1 Increases the speed

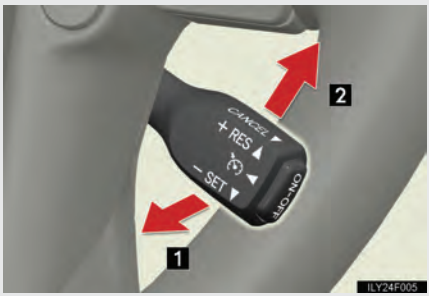
2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:
Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.
Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without cancelling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on.

■ **If the cruise control indicator light flashes**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When towing a trailer or emergency towing

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



1 Display
2 Set speed
3 Indicators
4 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
5 Cruise control switch

*: If equipped

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

STEP 1



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

STEP 2



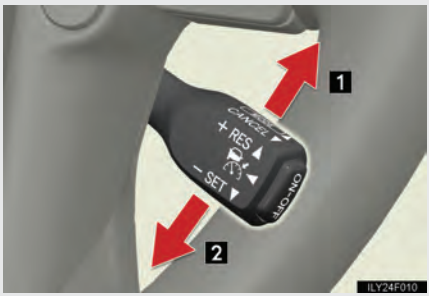
Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated

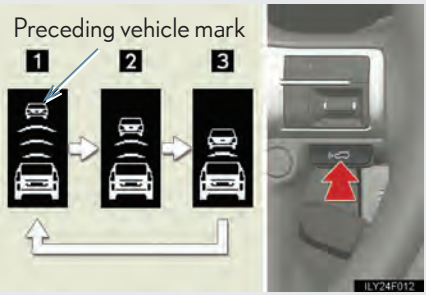
Large adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 258), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

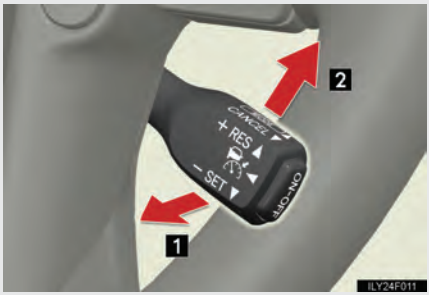
If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will be also displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 160 ft. (50 m)
Medium	Approximately 130 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

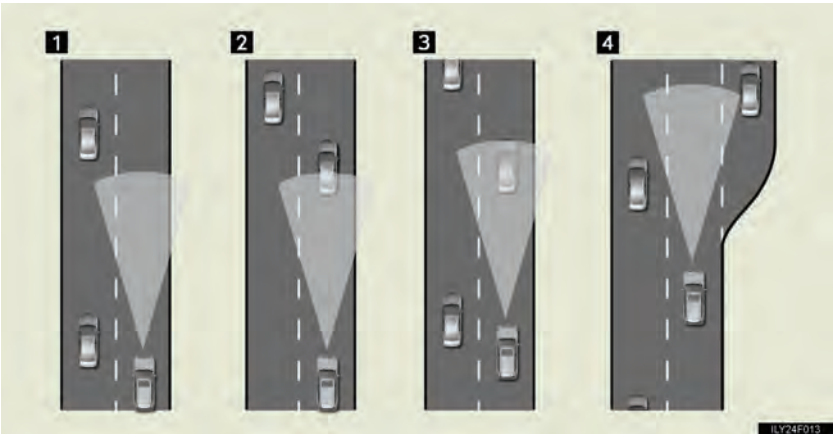
2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following the distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



1 Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2 Example of deceleration cruising

When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

3 Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration

When there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

When warning does not occur

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed, and immediately after it is released

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.



1 Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Cruise control indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately one second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle is automatically returns to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 252

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 253

■ **Dynamic radar cruise can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D. (Recommended)
  Dynamic radar cruise control can also be set when the shift lever is in the S position and range 4 or higher has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ **Set speed**

The set speed may be unsustainable depending on driving circumstances.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the high speed wiper operation position).
- The driving mode is set to second start mode.
- Bad weather causes the detection function to become extremely unstable.
- Multi-terrain mode is selected other than OFF.
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the dynamic radar cruise control system is on.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control**

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the dynamic radar cruise control system is on.

■ **Radar sensor and grille cover**

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



1 Grille cover

2 Radar sensor

■ **Warning lights and messages for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning lights and messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 700)

■ **Warning may not occur when**

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

■ **Certification**

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.
FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio frequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

For vehicles sold in Canada
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for the dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice and snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)
- When a buzzer is heard often
- When towing a trailer or emergency towing
- In traffic conditions where the vehicle is repeatedly sped up and slowed down at frequent intervals

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 257) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- Excessive exhaust gas (black smoke) is coming from the vehicle ahead or other vehicles around you, obscuring your front view
- The rear section of the vehicle ahead is extremely dirty
- The vehicle ahead has higher ground clearance

⚠ CAUTION

■ To ensure the sensor functions correctly

Do not do the following to the sensor or grille as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result in an accident:

- Sticking or attaching anything to them
- Leaving them dirty
- Disassembling or subjecting them to strong shocks
- Modifying or painting them
- Replacing them with non-genuine parts

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

Intuitive parking assist*

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system

Types of sensors

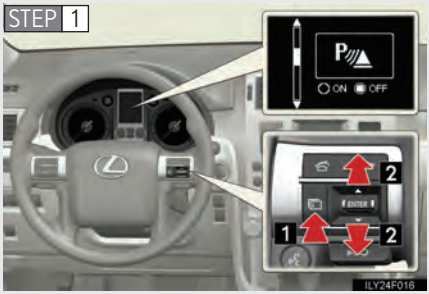


1 Front corner sensors
2 Front center sensors
3 Rear corner sensors
4 Rear center sensors

*: If equipped

Intuitive parking assist switch

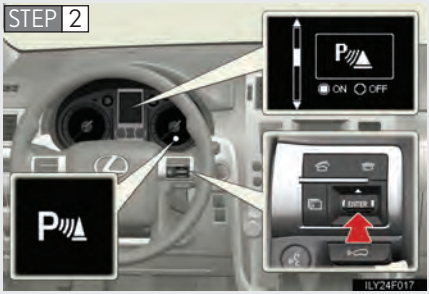
STEP 1



1 Press the menu switch.
The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards until the Intuitive parking assist mark appears in the multi-information display.

STEP 2



Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".
The Intuitive parking assist indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns the Intuitive parking assist on and off.

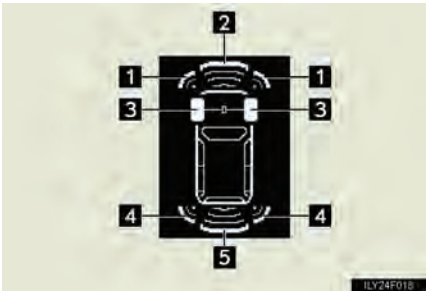
When on, the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

Optitron meter



1 Front corner sensor operation
2 Front center sensor operation
3 Front tire angle
4 Rear corner sensor operation
5 Rear center sensor operation

Accessory meter



When the vehicle is moving forward or backward

A simplified image is displayed when an obstacle is detected.

The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

Distance display

Corner sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Optitron meter	Accessory meter (insert display)
Front: 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.6 ft. (47.5 cm) Rear: 1.8 ft. (55 cm) to 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
Front: 1.6 ft. (47.5 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm) Rear: 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Front: Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm) Rear: Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

Center sensors

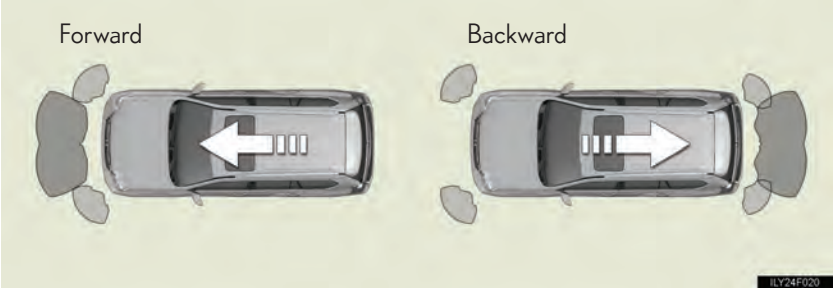
Approximate distance to obstacle	Optitron meter	Accessory meter (insert display)
Front: 3.3 ft. (100 cm) to 1.6 ft. (50 cm) Rear: 4.9 ft. (150 cm) to 2.1 ft. (65 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)
Front: 1.6 ft. (50 cm) to 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm) Rear: 2.1 ft. (65 cm) to 1.6 ft. (50 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
Front: 1.2 ft. (37.5 cm) to 1.0 ft. (30 cm) Rear: 1.6 ft. (50 cm) to 1.3 ft. (40 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Front: Less than 1.0 ft. (30 cm) Rear: Less than 1.3 ft. (40 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

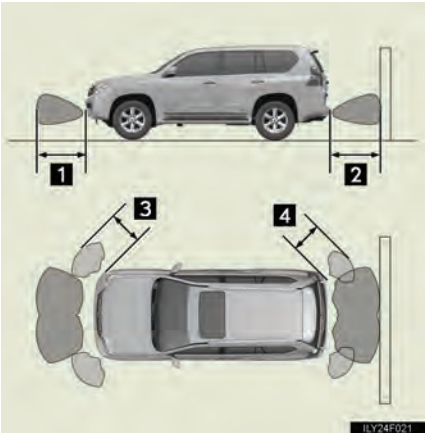
A beep sounds when the corner sensors and center sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously.
  - Front corner sensors: Approximately 1.1 ft. (35 cm)
  - Front center sensors: Approximately 1.0 ft. (30 cm)
  - Rear corner sensors: Approximately 0.8 ft. (25 cm)
  - Rear center sensors: Approximately 1.3 ft. (40 cm)
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle.

Sensors that operate



Detection range of the sensors



1 Approximately 3.3 ft. (100 cm)
2 Approximately 4.9 ft. (150 cm)
3 Approximately 2.0 ft. (60 cm)
4 Approximately 1.8 ft. (55 cm)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
  - A sensor is frozen.
  - A sensor is covered in any way.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
  - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
  - A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
  - The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
  - Towing eyelets are installed.
  - A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
  - The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
  - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
  - A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ **When there is a malfunction**

In the following cases, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer

- If the bumper is damaged.
- If the distance display remains on without a buzzer sound.

■ **If a message is displayed**

→P. 700

■ **Certification (Canada only)**

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

■ **Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer**

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 782)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution when using the Intuitive parking assist**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 8 mph (13 km/h).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Notes when washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

LDA (Lane Departure Alert)*

While driving on a freeway or motor highway that has lane markers, this system recognizes the lanes using a camera as a sensor to alert the driver when the vehicle deviates from its lane.

If the system judges that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it alerts the driver using rapid beeping and indications on the multi-information display.

Turning the LDA system on

The system will be activated depending on the recognizability of lane markers and on the vehicle speed.



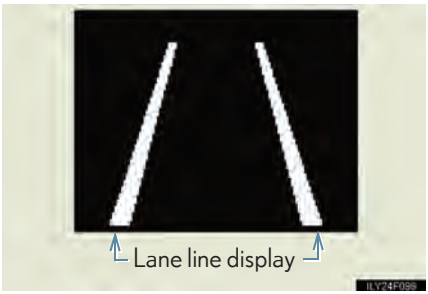
Press the "LDA" switch to activate the system.

The "LDA" indicator will come on.
Press the switch again to turn the LDA system off.

*: If equipped

Indication on the multi-information display

While the LDA system is on, a lane line display is shown on the multi-information display to inform the driver that the LDA system is on.



- When thin lines are shown: Lane markers are not recognized by the system, or the LDA system is temporarily canceled.
- When solid lane lines are shown: The LDA system is active.

The LDA system can be operated when

- The "LDA" switch is on.
- Vehicle speed is between 30 mph and 125 mph (48 km/h and 200 km/h).

Temporary cancellation of the LDA system

If any of the following occurs, the LDA system will be temporarily canceled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LDA system.
- The lane lines cannot be recognized while driving.
- The wiper operates continuously.
- When the lane departure warning function is activated.
  Once the lane departure warning function is activated, it will be temporarily canceled and resume a few seconds later.

When the vehicle has been parked in the sun

The LDA system may not be available for a while after driving has started. In such cases, turn the LDA system off and turn it on again after normal temperature returns. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the camera sensor becomes suitable for its operation, the functions will begin to operate.

Warning lights and messages for LDA

Warning lights and messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 700)

CAUTION

Before using the LDA system

This system provides information to the driver in accordance with the road geometry and the driving conditions. Be aware of your surroundings at all times, correct the driving path while driving appropriately and be responsible for your own safety.

This system operates by using the camera to identify lane markers when the LDA switch is on and the vehicle is being driven at the system operating speed.
Operation may be temporarily suspended if the camera cannot recognize the lane markers or if the system cannot operate due to the road environment or driving conditions. Also, since an alarm may sound unnecessarily if the lane markers cannot be correctly identified, make sure to drive responsibly even while the system is operating.

If a malfunction occurs in the system, the driver will be alerted by a buzzer and a display, and LDA operation will be temporarily suspended. However, this does not present a problem to normal driving.

If the alert is displayed even after restarting the engine, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Turn the LDA off while driving in any of the following situations

Do not use LDA in any of the following situations.
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with snow tires, tire chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment.
- When driving with non-standard parts or aftermarket equipment installed (including modified tires and suspensions, etc.).
- When towing a trailer.
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, curbs, reflector posts, etc.).
- When there is snow in the wheel tracks of the road.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow is covering the lane markers.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road.
- When driving in a lane other than the driving or passing lanes on a freeway or highway.
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane.

NOTICE

In the following situations, the LDA will not work, or will not perform reliably

- When the lane markers are interrupted or are not present, such as before a toll-booth.
- When the lane markers are only on one side of the road.
- When driving on a sharp curve.
- When lanes are extremely narrow or extremely wide.
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure.
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short.
- When the lane markers are broken or when "Botts' dots" or "Raised pavement markers" can be seen.
- When the lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete.
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light.
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel.
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens.
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, etc.
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, standing water, etc.
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement.
- When driving on roads that are branching or merging.
- When headlight brightness is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned.

⚠ NOTICE

Camera sensor

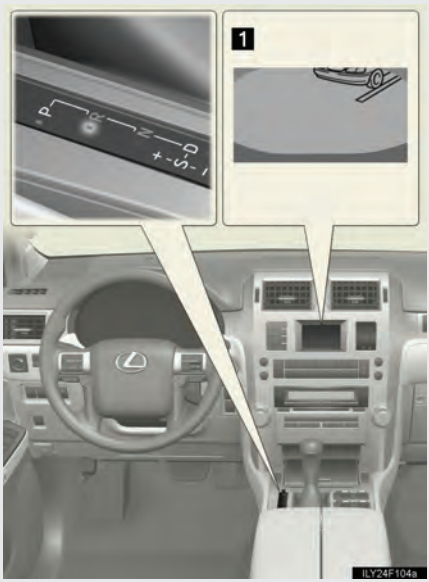


Observe the following to ensure that the LDA system functions correctly.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  LDA performance may deteriorate due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not change the installation position of the camera sensor or remove it. The direction of the camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may cause the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images. In such a case, use the windshield defogger to provide warm, dry air to the windshield.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
  The camera sensor may recognize the image reflected on the windshield as lane markings by mistake.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
- Do not attach stickers or other items to the windshield near the camera sensor.
- Adjust the inside rear view mirror correctly so that it does not interfere with the camera sensor.

Rear view monitor system

The rear view monitor assists the driver by displaying an image of the area behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This reversed image is a similar image to the one on the inside rear view mirror.



The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in the R position.

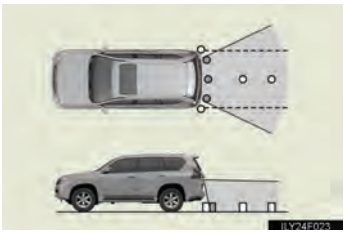
If the shift lever is shifted out of R, the screen returns to the previous one.

1 Accessory meter (vehicles without navigation system) or touch screen (vehicles with navigation system)

■ **The rear view monitor can be operated when**

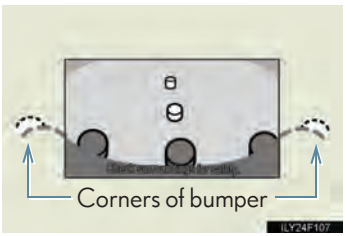
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Displayed area**



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions.



Rear view monitor camera



The rear view monitor camera is located on the back door as shown in the illustration. The camera uses a special lens. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see images on the screen even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow and mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

When the back door is open

The screen cannot be used because a message is displayed.
When backing up the vehicle, make sure the back door is securely closed.

Smear effect



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

CAUTION

When using the rear view monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the camera lens is extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Situations unsuitable for rear view monitor
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
- When traveling on a sloping road, the area displayed on the screen may change.
- If the tires are changed, the area displayed on the screen may change.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

Wide view front & side monitor*

This system can display the wide view front monitor and the side monitor.
The wide view front monitor uses a super-wide angle lens to display on screen the areas to the left and right of the vehicle and the blind spots to the front of the vehicle. This system helps the driver check for approaching cars, bicycles and pedestrians when at intersections with poor visibility.
The side monitor uses a camera installed in the passenger's side outside rear view mirror to display on screen the area to the right of the vehicle, helping the driver check this area.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system



On/off

The camera image is displayed when the wide view front & side monitor switch is pressed.

*: If equipped

Changing the display

The screen changes as follows with each press of the wide view front & side monitor switch.

Wide view front monitor (Side monitor) → Side monitor (Wide view front monitor) → Trip information → Wide view front monitor (Side monitor)

The wide view front monitor display and trip information are not accessible when the shift lever is in R.

On vehicles with Multi-terrain Select, the Multi-terrain Monitor can be switched to by pressing the wide view front & side monitor switch while the system is operating.

Range covered by each camera



1 Wide view front monitor
2 Side monitor

The illustration shown here is an example. As such, the actual visible area may be different. See P. 290 for information about the visual range of each camera.

Display

Wide view front monitor

The image from the front camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in front of the vehicle for safety, for example in intersections with poor visibility.



Side monitor

The image from the side camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area to the right of the vehicle, for example when taking off and stopping, when turning right, etc.



■ **The wide view front & side monitor can be operated when**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 6 mph (10km/h).

■ **Automatic system cancelation**

In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).
- When the shift lever is in P or R.

■ **When the outside rear view mirrors have been folded**

The side monitor screen can be displayed even if the outside rear view mirrors have been folded. In this case, there will be a slight difference between the image displayed when the outside rear view mirrors are extended and when the outside rear view mirrors have been folded.

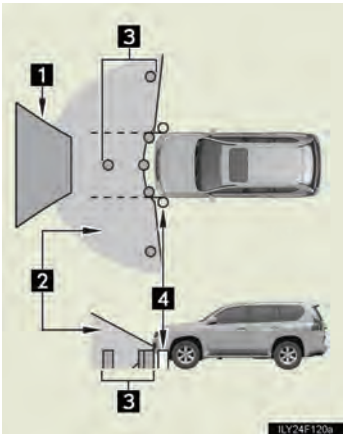
If the side monitor is displayed while the outside rear view mirrors are folded, you cannot check the area near the front edge of the vehicle as the base of the outside rear view mirrors will be in the way.

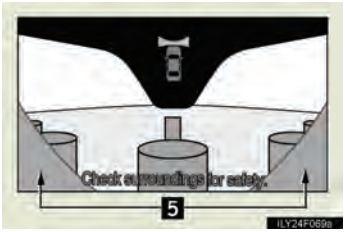
Displayed area

The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions.

Front camera





1 Masking

This section is masked to prevent the driver from moving the vehicle while only watching the wide view front monitor screen. The driver must visually confirm this area directly.

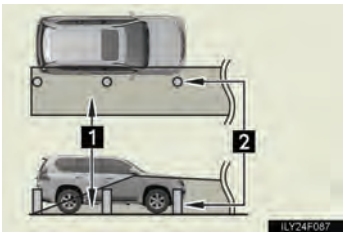
2 Camera's field of view

3 Objects visible to the camera

4 Objects not visible to the camera

5 Parts of the vehicle (bumper, grill, etc.)

Side camera





1 Camera's field of view
2 Objects visible to the camera
3 Right side of vehicle

■ **Wide view front & side monitor cameras**



1 Side camera

2 Front camera

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see images on the screen even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow and mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- The camera lens is damaged by flying stones.

Smear effect



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source will appear to have streaks of light emanating from it. The streaks will also appear when the light source is in the masked area.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

CAUTION

When using the wide view front & side monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.

- Never depend solely on the monitor system.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the hood or doors are open.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Conditions which may affect the wide view front & side monitor system

- If the front of the vehicle or the passenger side outside rear view mirror has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the camera lens is extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Situations unsuitable for wide view front & side monitor
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

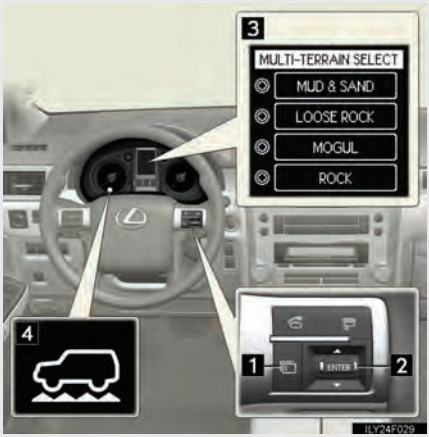
NOTICE

When using the wide view front & side monitor

Even if an obstacle is no longer visible on the side monitor, do not turn the steering wheel further in the direction the vehicle is turning until the vehicle has moved completely past the obstacle. If the steering wheel is turned to full lock, the vehicle will turn in the smallest possible turning circle, and may collide with the obstacle.

Multi-terrain Select is a system that improves drivability in off-road situations.

Select a mode that most closely matches the type of terrain on which you are driving from among 4 modes.
Engine control and brake control can be optimized in accordance with the selected mode.



1 Menu switch
2 "ENTER" switch
3 Multi-information display
Displays status information including operating status and road type selection.
4 Multi-terrain Select indicator

*: If equipped

Selectable modes

A mode which matches the road conditions can be selected from among the following 4 modes.

Mode	Road Conditions
MUD & SAND	Suitable for muddy roads, sandy roads, snow-covered roads, dirt trails and other slippery or dirty conditions
LOOSE ROCK	Suitable for slippery conditions consisting of mixtures of earth and loose rock
MOGUL	Suitable for a wide range of off-road conditions, particularly very bumpy conditions
ROCK	Suitable for rocky terrain

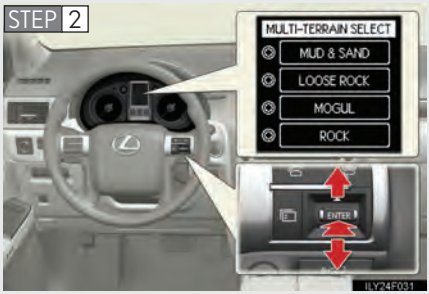
Switching modes



Push the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change to electronic features control mode.

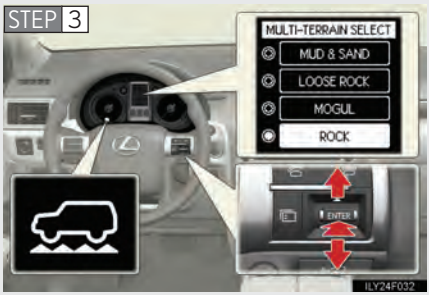
STEP 2



Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards until "MULTI-TERRAIN SELECT" appears and then press the "ENTER" switch.

The mode selection screen is displayed.

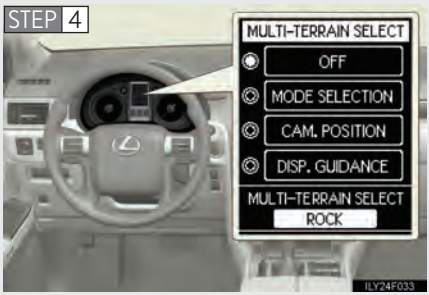
STEP 3



Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards to select a desired mode and then press the "ENTER" switch.

The system switches to the selected mode, and the multi-terrain select indicator will turn on.

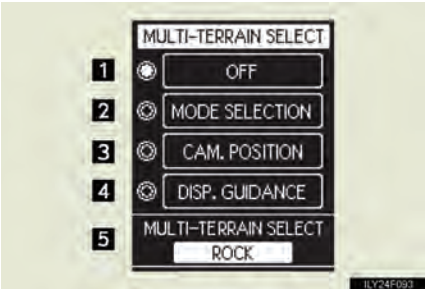
STEP 4



Once the mode has been set, the mode name will be displayed and operation will commence.

Statement on the multi-information display

After mode selection



1 OFF
Turn the system off

2 MODE SELECTION
Change the mode (→P. 297)

3 CAM. POSITION
Switch the displayed image when using the Multi-terrain Monitor (→P. 304)

4 DISP. GUIDANCE
Explain other necessary operations when selecting a mode (→P. 300)

5 Status
Display the status of the system

The displayed content may differ in accordance with the system status.

Operation guidance

Operation guidance is shown on the multi-information display when you cannot set a mode.

When the operation guidance is shown on the multi-information display, follow the instructions in the table.



Guidance Display	Vehicle Status	Procedure
SHIFT TO L4	LOOSE ROCK, MOGUL or ROCK mode is selected when the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4	Set the four-wheel drive control switch to L4
STOP THE VEHICLE AND SHIFT THE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION TO N	The four-wheel drive control switch has been shifted to H4 or L4 and LOOSE ROCK, MOGUL or ROCK mode is selected, but the automatic transmission is not in N position or the vehicle is not stopped	Stop the vehicle completely and shift the shift lever into N
ACCELERATE OR DECELERATE	The center differential lock/unlock switch is pressed when Multi-terrain Select is operating, but the center differential cannot be switched between lock and unlock	Drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse
RETURN THE FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE CONTROL SWITCH	The four-wheel drive control switch is shifted when Multi-terrain Select is operating, but the transfer cannot be shifted to H4 or L4 position	Return the four-wheel drive control switch to L4 or H4
MULTI-TERRAIN SELECT NOT AVAILABLE	The vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h) or the VSC, EFI, 4WD and/or Multi-terrain Select system may be malfunctioning	Reduce vehicle speed If the system is still not available, contact your Lexus dealer

■ **The Multi-terrain Select can be operated when**

- Vehicle speed is less than 7 mph (12 km/h)
- Crawl Control is off

■ **When using Multi-terrain Select**

The following functions cannot be switched on or off.

- VSC
- Active TRAC
- Second start mode

A message will be shown on the multi-information display stating that these functions cannot be switched using the VSC OFF switch or the menu and "ENTER" switches.

■ **When selecting a terrain mode**

If you are unsure which mode is appropriate, select MOGUL when the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 or select MUD & SAND when it is in H4.

■ **When it is difficult to generate traction**

MUD & SAND mode provides the largest amount of tire slippage, followed by LOOSE ROCK, MOGUL and ROCK mode.
Drivability can be improved by selecting a mode which provides a smaller amount of tire slippage than the current mode when the amount of tire slippage is large, or conversely selecting a mode which provides a larger amount of tire slippage than the current mode when the amount of tire slippage is small.

■ **When the vehicle is stuck**

Switching the transfer and differential
For the operation of the following functions, refer to the following pages.

- Four-wheel drive system (→P. 322)
- Center differential lock (→P. 323)

■ **When the TRAC or Active TRAC operates continuously**

→P. 340

■ **When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 position**

If the Multi-terrain Select system is not operating and the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4, TRAC OFF will be shown on the multi-information display.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

The Multi-terrain Select indicator light will blink. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When using the Multi-terrain Select**

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- There is a chance that the selected mode may not be the most appropriate in terms of road conditions such as pitch, slipperiness, undulation, etc. (→P. 297)
- Multi-terrain Select is not intended to expand the limits of the vehicle. Check the road conditions thoroughly beforehand, and drive safely and carefully.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Precaution for use**

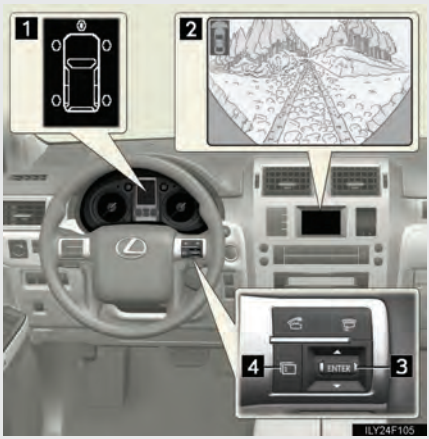
The Multi-terrain Select is intended for use during off-road driving. Do not use the system at any other time.

Multi-terrain Monitor*

The Multi-terrain Monitor displays the vehicle surroundings when driving at low speeds, thus assisting off-road driving and helping the driver to check the vehicle surroundings.

The Multi-terrain Monitor displays the vehicle surroundings automatically when a mode is being selected on the Multi-terrain Select.

- You can switch between 4 different images (front, side-front, side-rear and rear) by operating the switch.
- By using the front and side monitors to identify objects in the vicinity or path of the tires, you can help to prevent the vehicle from becoming stuck unexpectedly while driving.



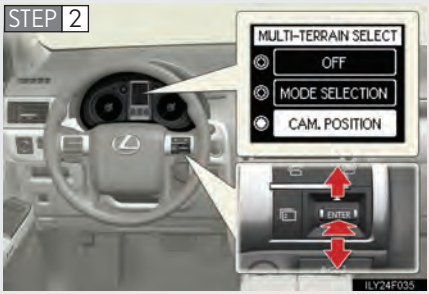
1 Multi-information display
2 Accessory meter (vehicles without navigation system) or touch screen (vehicles with navigation system)
3 "ENTER" switch
4 Menu switch

*: If equipped

Switching the image

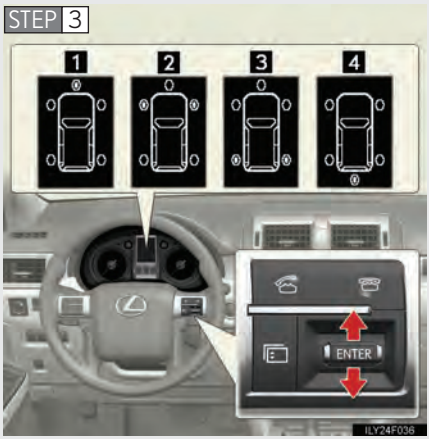
STEP 1 Select any mode using the Multi-terrain Select system. (→P. 296)

STEP 2



Move the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards to select "CAM. POSITION", and press the "ENTER" switch.

STEP 3



The camera view can be switched by moving the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards.

Each time the switch is operated, the mark on the multi-information display will move and the image displayed on the monitor will switch.

1 Front monitor*1

2 Side-front simultaneous display monitor*2

3 Side-rear simultaneous display monitor*2

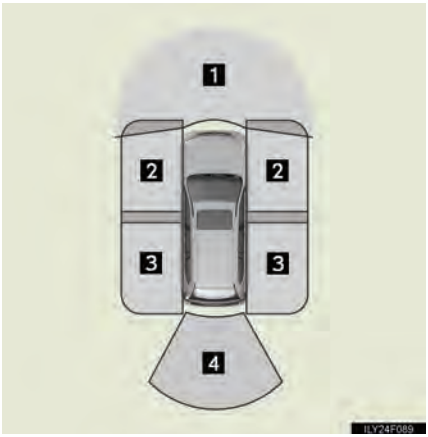
4 Rear monitor*3

*1: Cannot be selected if the shift lever is in R.

*2: The displayed icon differs in accordance with shift position.

*3: Cannot be selected if the shift lever is not in R.

Range covered by each camera



1 Front monitor
2 Side-front simultaneous display monitor
3 Side-rear simultaneous display monitor
4 Rear monitor

The illustration shown here is an example. As such, the actual visible area may be different. See P. 309 for information about the visual range of each camera.

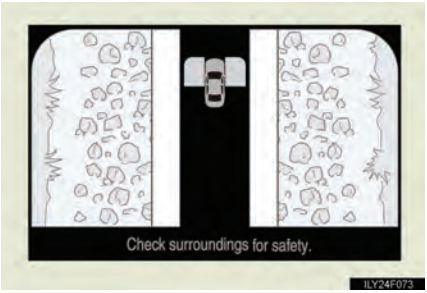
Display

Front monitor



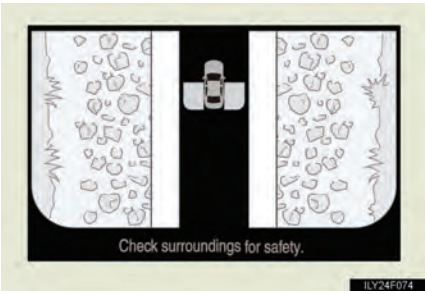
The image from the front camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in front of the vehicle for safety.

Side-front simultaneous display monitor



The image from both side cameras is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area on both sides of the vehicle at the same time, and to check for objects near the tires or the sides of the vehicle.

Side-rear simultaneous display monitor



The image from both side cameras is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area on both sides of the vehicle at the same time, and to check for objects near the tires or the sides of the vehicle.

Rear monitor



The image from the rear camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in rear of the vehicle for safety.

The Multi-terrain Monitor can be operated when

- Any Multi-terrain Select mode is selected.
- The door mirrors are not folded.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).

Automatic system cancellation

In the following situations, the image is canceled automatically.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).

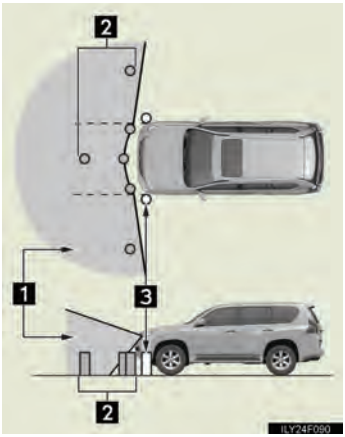
  After the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h), the image will continue to be displayed for a short time.
  If the vehicle speed returns to below 7 mph (12 km/h) before the image extinguishes, the image will continue to be displayed.
- The Multi-terrain Select is off.
- The door mirrors are folded.

Displayed area

The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions.

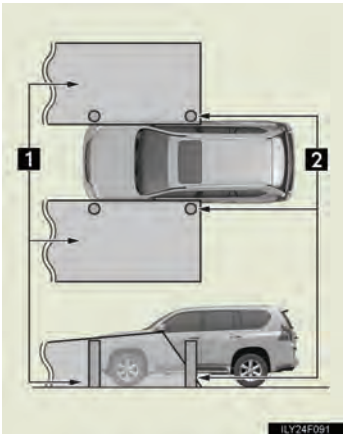
Front camera





1 Camera's field of view
2 Objects visible to the camera
3 Objects not visible to the camera
4 Parts of the vehicle (bumper, grill, etc.)

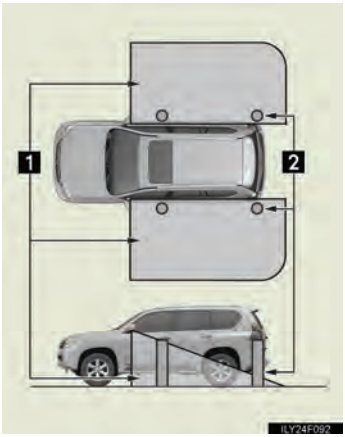
Side camera (side-front simultaneous display monitor)





1 Camera's field of view
2 Objects visible to the camera
3 Right side of vehicle
4 Left side of vehicle

Side camera (side-rear simultaneous display monitor)



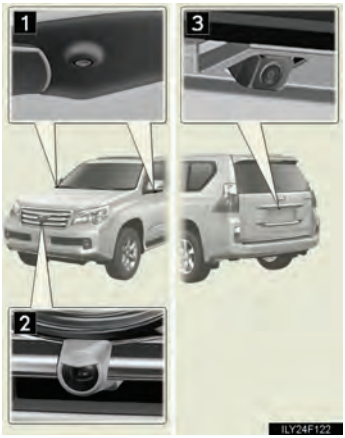
1 Camera's field of view
2 Objects visible to the camera
3 Right side of vehicle
4 Left side of vehicle



Rear camera

→P. 281

Multi-terrain Monitor cameras



1 Side cameras
2 Front camera
3 Rear camera

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see images on the screen even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow and mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- The camera lens is damaged by flying stones.

Smear effect



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source will appear to have streaks of light emanating from it. The streaks will also appear when the light source is in the vehicle icon area.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

Display settings

Vehicles without a navigation system

→P. 217

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

CAUTION

When using the Multi-terrain Monitor system

Observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- Never depend solely on the monitor system.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the hood or doors are open.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Conditions which may affect the Multi-terrain Monitor system

- If the front or the rear of the vehicle or the outside rear view mirror has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the camera lens is extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Situations unsuitable for Multi-terrain Monitor
  - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow
  - When using tire chains
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

NOTICE

■ When using the Multi-terrain Monitor

- Even if an obstacle is no longer visible on the side monitor, do not turn the steering wheel further in the direction the vehicle is turning until the vehicle has moved completely past the obstacle. If the steering wheel is turned to full lock, the vehicle will turn in the smallest possible turning circle, and may collide with the obstacle.
- It may be difficult to judge distance with the image from the front camera due to the characteristics of the lens. Drive carefully while checking the actual distance to the obstacles displayed on the screen. Also, give your full attention to sudden bumps in the road.

Rear height control air suspension*

The rear height control air suspension allows the driver to control vehicle rear height in order to adjust driving conditions. Select the desired height with the height control switch.



1 Height control OFF switch
2 Height control switch

Selecting vehicle height

Operating the switch changes vehicle rear height as follows:



1 Higher
2 Lower

Vehicle height can be adjusted only when the engine is running.

The selected height mode will be shown on the rear height control air suspension display.

The selected mode will flash while the height mode is being changed.

*: If equipped

Height modes

- N mode (normal mode): For ordinary driving

  Normal height

- HI mode (high mode): For driving on bumpy roads

  1.6 in. (40 mm) higher than the normal rear height

  HI mode cannot be selected when vehicle speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).

- LO mode (low mode): For the ease of egress/ingress and loading luggage

  0.8 in. (20 mm) lower than the normal rear height

  LO mode cannot be selected when vehicle speed exceeds 7 mph (12 km/h).

Disabling the height control



When the height control OFF switch is pressed with the vehicle stopped, the vehicle height is fixed at the current height.

This status is memorized in the system even after the engine is stopped.

The height can be adjusted by pressing the height control OFF switch again.

When vehicle speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h), the rear height control air suspension turns on automatically.

■ **When HI mode is selected**

The vehicle height will change to N mode when driving at the speeds of 18 mph (30 km/h).
Even if vehicle speed is then reduced to under 18 mph (30 km/h), height will not return to HI mode.

■ **When LO mode is selected**

The vehicle height will change to N mode when vehicle speed exceeds 7 mph (12 km/h).
Even if vehicle speed is then reduced to under 7 mph (12 km/h), height will not return to LO mode.

■ **Automatic leveling function**

Regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load, vehicle height in any mode is always adjusted to a fixed height by the automatic leveling function.

■ **The rear height control air suspension will not operate in the following cases:**

- The underbody of the vehicle is touching the surface of the road.
- The area around the suspension is covered with ice.

■ **Even if you hear an operating noise**

This does not indicate a problem in the rear height control air suspension.

■ **Parking and stopping tips**

- If you immediately stop the engine after off-road driving, or park the vehicle for a long time, the vehicle height may gradually lower. When parking, make sure there is nothing under the vehicle that may come in contact with the underbody. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.
- The vehicle height may change as the temperature changes when the engine is stopped. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.

When lowering the vehicle

In order to prevent the vehicle height from rising as occupants leave the vehicle, lowering control will occur for a short while after the engine has been stopped.

The rear height control air suspension failure warning

- If a malfunction occurs in the rear height control air suspension, N mode is automatically selected. However, the system may not switch to N mode depending on the location of the malfunction.
- The warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, and the rear height control air suspension cannot be activated until the malfunction is corrected.
  Stop the engine and start it again. If the warning message turns off, the system is operating correctly. If the warning message continues to be displayed, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ CAUTION

The rear height control air suspension must be turned off

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the automatic leveling function may cause vehicle height to change, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident:

- When jacking up the vehicle, installing tire chains or tying the vehicle with chains/wires for transportation via flat bed truck, turn off the rear height control air suspension and stop the engine.
- When the vehicle must be towed or disconnecting a trailer, put the vehicle height in N mode and turn off the rear height control air suspension.
- When the vehicle is stuck, turn off the rear height control air suspension.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Selecting the correct height mode

- HI mode should only be used when driving on rough roads, for example when driving off-road. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an accident.
- Do not select HI mode when loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier. Because the vehicle's center of gravity will become higher when in the mode, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an accident.
- Before lowering vehicle height, check that there is no one under the vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Be careful in any place where overhead space is limited

The vehicle height will rise when a higher mode is selected or cargo is unloaded. This may cause damage to the vehicle.

■ Do not select LO mode when driving on bumpy roads

If the underbody of the vehicle touches a rugged road surface, the vehicle may be damaged.

■ Changing vehicle height

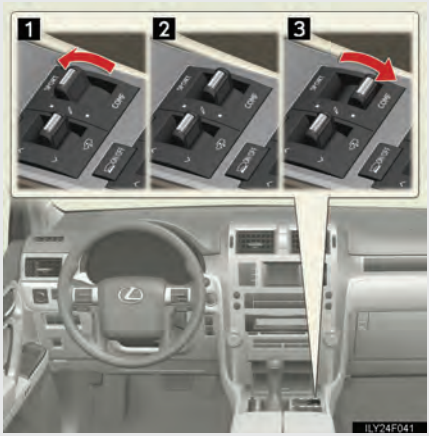
Do not change vehicle height frequently.
The compressor may overheat and stop operation.

■ When on the extremely uneven roads with rocks

Sometimes the vehicle height is not adjusted because it is judged as uneven road driving.

AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)*

AVS controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selecting an optimum driving mode allows good riding comfort and stability.



1 Sport mode

For winding mountain road driving or high speed driving

2 Normal mode

For normal driving

3 Comfort mode

For bumpy road driving

■ Driving mode

- Mode **1** is suitable for heavy load or driving on a unpaved road.
- With the four-wheel drive control switch at L4, the damping effect suitable for off-road driving will be provided, regardless of the position of the AVS switch.

*: If equipped

Use the four-wheel drive control switch and center differential lock/unlock switch to select the following transfer and center differential modes.

Four-wheel drive control switch



1 H4 (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

2 L4 (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and hard pulling in sand or mud, etc.

The low speed four-wheel drive and VSC OFF indicators will come on.

Center differential lock/unlock switch



Lock the center differential when your vehicle's wheels get stuck in a ditch or when driving on a slippery or bumpy surface.

The center differential lock indicator will come on.

Unlock the center differential after the wheels have been freed, or after moving to a flat, non-slippery surface.

To unlock the center differential, push the switch again.

Shifting between H4 and L4

Shifting from H4 to L4

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely with brake pedal held down.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

STEP 3 Push and shift the four-wheel drive control switch to L4.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns on.

Shifting from L4 to H4

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely with brake pedal held down.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

STEP 3 Push and shift the four-wheel drive control switch to H4.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns off.

■ **When the four-wheel drive control switch can be operated**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in the N position.
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

■ **The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light**

- The indicator light blinks while switching between H4 and L4.
- If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light continues to blink when you operate the four-wheel drive control switch to the H4 or L4 position, stop the vehicle completely, shift the shift lever securely into N and then operate the switch again.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator turns on/off, the transfer mode may not be shifted completely. The transfer mode disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and allows the vehicle to move regardless of the shift position. (At this time, the indicator blinks and the buzzer sounds.)
  Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the shift lever is in P. You or someone else could be seriously injured. You must complete the shifting of the transfer mode and confirm that the indicator light has turned off (H4) or turned on (L4).
- If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the four-wheel drive control system may not be able to shift. When the engine is warmer operate the switch again.

If the indicator continue to blink even if doing so, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. There may be a trouble in the four-wheel drive system.

■ **When the center differential lock/unlock switch can be operated**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **The center differential lock indicator light**

- The indicator light blinks while locking/unlocking the center differential.
- If the center differential lock indicator light blinks and the buzzer sounds when the center differential is locked, stop the slipping or spinning and push the switch again.

If the indicator continue to blink even if doing so, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. There may be a trouble in the four-wheel drive system.

■ **Locking/unlocking the center differential**

- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in L4 with the center differential locked, VSC is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and VSC OFF indicator light will come on.)
- If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not turn off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
- Avoid turning suddenly while the center differential is locked. If you do turn suddenly, the difference in turning speeds between the front and rear wheels may have a similar effect to braking, thus making driving difficult.

⚠ CAUTION

While driving

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never move the four-wheel drive control switch if the wheels have lost traction.
- Do not operate the center differential lock/unlock when the vehicle is turning or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

⚠ NOTICE

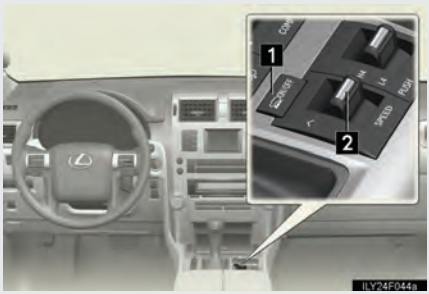
To prevent damage to the center differential

- For normal driving on dry and hard surface roads, unlock the center differential.
- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the slippery or bumpy surface.

Crawl Control*

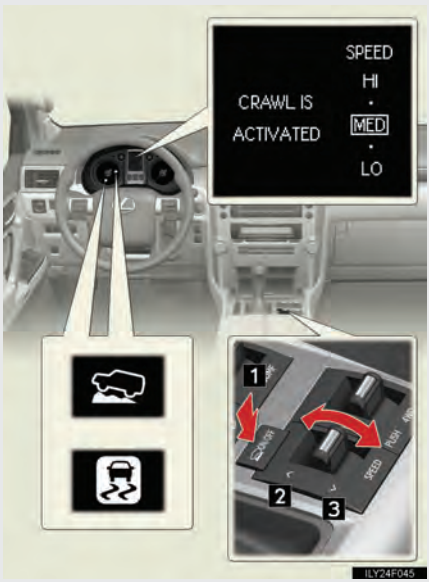
Allows travel on extremely rough off-road surfaces at a fixed low speed without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. Minimizes loss of traction or vehicle slip when driving on slippery road surfaces, allowing for stable driving.

Crawl Control switch



1 ON/OFF switch
2 Speed selection switch

System operation



1 On/off

The Crawl Control indicator is lit and the slip indicator flashes when operating.

Also, the operating status and speed select status of the Crawl Control are shown on the multi-information display.

2 Higher
3 Lower

*: If equipped

Speed modes

- LO (low mode)
  Effective when traveling on rocks, or descending a slope of mogul and rubble.*
- MED (medium mode)
  Effective when ascending a slope of mogul.*
- HI (high mode)
  Effective when ascending a slope of mogul and rubble, or traveling on snow, dirt, mud, sand, gravel, grass etc.*

The position between low and medium modes and the position between medium and high modes can also be selected.

*: Depending on the road surface, may not be the most effective.

The Crawl Control can be operated when

- The shift lever is in any gear other than P or N.
- The four-wheel drive control switch is in L4.
- The driver's door is closed.

■ **Automatic system cancelation**

In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically:
At that time, the buzzer will sound, the slip indicator turns off, and the Crawl Control indicator flashes.
A notification will be displayed on the multi-information display for several seconds. (→P. 700)

- When the shift lever is moved to P or N.
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4.
- When the driver's door is opened.

When turning off Crawl Control while traveling, stop the vehicle before the Crawl Control indicator turns off, or drive extremely carefully.

■ **Function limit**

- In the following situations, you will be able to use brake control to drive downhill at a fixed low speed, but you will be unable to use engine control to drive uphill at a fixed low speed.
  - When the driving mode is set to second start mode.
  - When the vehicle speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- In the following situation, engine control and brake control will stop temporarily:
  At that time, the Crawl Control indicator flashes.

  When the vehicle speed is higher than 15 mph (25 km/h).

■ **When the Crawl Control system is operated continuously**

This may cause the brake actuator to overheat. In this case, the Crawl Control system will stop operating, a buzzer will sound, the Crawl Control indicator will turn off after flashing and the TRAC OFF will be shown on the multi-information display. In this case, quickly stop the vehicle in a safe place and give the actuator adequate time to cool off. Refrain from using the system until the message goes off. (The vehicle can be driven normally during this time.)

■ **If the automatic transmission system overheats**

The system will cease operation, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place until the warning message turns off. (→P. 700)

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the Crawl Control system**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in Crawl Control system.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the Crawl Control system is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ **If the slip indicator comes on...**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Consult your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When using Crawl Control**

Do not rely solely on the Crawl Control. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

■ **These conditions may cause the system not to operate properly**

When driving on the following surfaces, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident:

- Extremely steep inclines.
- Extremely uneven surfaces.
- Snow-covered roads, or other slippery surfaces.

DAC (Downhill Assist Control system)*

The DAC helps to prevent excessive speed on steep downhill slopes.
The system will operate when the vehicle is traveling under 15 mph (25 km/h) and the four-wheel drive control switch is in the L4 position.

System operation



Shift the "DAC" switch to ON. The downhill assist control indicator light comes on and the system will operate.

When the system is in operation, the slip indicator light will flash, and the stop lights/high mounted stop lights will be lit.

Turning off the system

Shift the "DAC" switch to OFF while the system is in operation. The downhill assist control indicator will flash as the system gradually ceases operation, and will turn off when the system is fully off.
Shift the "DAC" switch to ON while the downhill assist control indicator is flashing to start the system again.

*: If equipped

■ **Operating tips**

The system will operate when the shift lever is in a position other than P, however to make effective use of the system it is recommended that the shift lever be shifted to 2 or 1 range of S mode.

■ **If the four-wheel drive control switch is in H4**

The system does not operate.

■ **When the downhill assist control system is operated continuously**

This may cause the brake actuator to overheat. In this case, the downhill assist control system will stop operating, a buzzer will sound and the DAC indicator will start flashing, and the TRAC OFF will be shown on the multi-information display. Refrain from using the system until the DAC indicator stays on and the message goes off. (The vehicle can be driven normally during this time.)

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the DAC**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in DAC.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the DAC is operating. None of these are indicators that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ **System malfunction**

- The DAC indicator does not come on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- The "DAC" indicator does not come on when the "DAC" switch is pressed.
- The slip indicator comes on.

In the above cases, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When using downhill assist control

Do not rely overmuch on the downhill assist control. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

■ The system may not operate on the following surfaces, which may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury

- Slippery surfaces such as wet or muddy roads
- Icy surface
- Unpaved roads

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) (vehicles with a Multi-terrain Select system)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface, or in off-road conditions (such as rough roads, sand and mud)

The Multi Terrain ABS operates in synchronization with the Multi-terrain Select

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

TRAC (Traction Control) for H4 mode

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

Active TRAC (Traction Control) for L4 mode*

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the 4 wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads, or in off-road conditions

Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an incline or slippery slope

KDSS (Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System)

KDSS helps to enhance ride comfort and handling response by using a hydraulic control system to control the suspension stabilizer bars in response to road surface and driving conditions during cornering or off-road driving

PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 343

*: The function only works in vehicles with Multi-terrain Select when Multi-terrain Select is switched on

When the VSC/TRAC or Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping or rolling backward when starting on an incline, or if any of the drive wheels spins, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRAC or Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating.

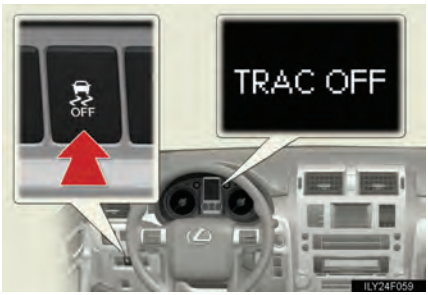
A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

Disabling the TRAC or Active TRAC/VSC systems

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the TRAC or Active TRAC/VSC systems may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

Turning off TRAC or Active TRAC system only



To turn the TRAC or Active TRAC system off, quickly press and release the button.

The TRAC OFF will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to turn the system back on.

Turning off both TRAC or Active TRAC and VSC systems



To turn the TRAC or Active TRAC and VSC systems off, press and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the TRAC OFF will be shown on the multi- information display.

Press the button again to turn the system back on.

■ **When the TRAC OFF is displayed on the multi-information display even if the VSC OFF switch has not been pressed**

TRAC/Active TRAC, hill-start assist control, downhill assist control and Crawl Control cannot be operated. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Hill-start assist control operation conditions**

- The shift lever is in D or S.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS/Multi Terrain ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRAC/Active TRAC and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS/Multi Terrain ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS/Multi Terrain ABS is activated.

■ **Reactivation of the TRAC or Active TRAC/VSC systems after turning off the engine**

Turning off the engine after turning off the TRAC or Active TRAC/VSC systems will automatically reactivate them.

■ **Reactivation of the TRAC or Active TRAC system linked to vehicle speed**

When only the TRAC or Active TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC or Active TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when both TRAC or Active TRAC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **When the brake system operates continuously**

The brake actuator may overheat. In this case, the TRAC or Active TRAC and hill-start assist control systems will stop operating, a buzzer will sound and the TRAC OFF will be shown on the multi-information display. Refrain from using the system until the message goes off. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

■ **If the slip indicator comes on...**

It may indicate a malfunction in the VSC, TRAC/Active TRAC or hill-start assist control system. Consult your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **The ABS/Multi Terrain ABS does not operate effectively when**

- Tires with inadequate gripping ability are used (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS/Multi Terrain ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS/Multi Terrain ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces

⚠ CAUTION

■ TRAC/Active TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC/Active TRAC is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Hill- start assist control does not operate effectively when

Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.

■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

■ When the TRAC or Active TRAC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRAC or Active TRAC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS/Multi Terrain ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

When the radar sensor detects that a frontal collision is highly likely or even unavoidable, safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seat belts only)

If the system detects that a collision is unavoidable, the system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.
The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 87)

However, when the VSC system is disabled, the system will not operate in the event of skidding.

Pre-collision brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-collision braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed. Pre-collision braking can be disabled using the pre-collision braking off switch.

*: If equipped

■ **AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) control (if equipped)**

When the system determines that there is a high possibility of a collision, the AVS optimizes the damping effect (→P. 321)

■ **Driver monitor system (if equipped)**

When the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision, and the driver is not facing forward, PCS warnings are given in advance to warn the driver. If the driver continues to be not facing forward, and a probable collision is detected, PCS informs the driver of danger by performing slight braking to provide a physically warning (pre-collision alert braking). (→P. 345)

Disabling pre-collision braking



1 Pre-collision braking disabled

2 Pre-collision braking enabled

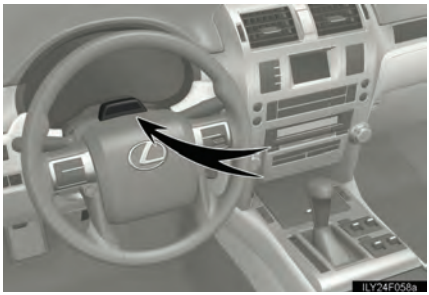
The "PCS" warning light comes on when pre-collision braking is disabled.

Radar sensor



The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

Driver monitor sensor (if equipped)



The driver monitor sensor detects the direction the driver is facing. The system determines whether the driver is facing forward.

■ The pre-collision system is operational when

● Pre-collision warning

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).

● Pre-collision seat belts (linked to the radar sensor):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-collision seat belts (linked to brake operation):

- Vehicle speed greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-collision brake assist:

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Pre-collision braking:

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).

● AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) control (if equipped):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).

- Pre-collision alert braking (vehicle with driver monitor system):
  - The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
  - The system determines that the driver is not facing forward.
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of a collision**

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When there are excessive changes in the vehicle height (when it tilts forwards or backwards)
- When there is an abnormality in the radar sensor

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the restricted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

■ **Obstacles not detected**

The system cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the system cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 688, 700)

■ **Certification**

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.
FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio frequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

For vehicles sold in Canada
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not overly rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-collision system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-collision system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-collision system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-collision system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safety. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary in any of the following situations.

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively:

- Keep the sensor and front grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.

CAUTION

Handling the driver monitor sensor (vehicles with driver monitor sensor)

Observe the following to ensure the driver monitor sensor can function effectively. Failure to do so may result in a malfunction or may prevent the system from correctly determining the direction the driver is facing, resulting in an unexpected accident.

- Do not disassemble, damage, lift or pull on the sensor.
- Do not touch the sensor while driving.
- Do not wet or spill water on the sensor.
- Do not drop anything on or allow anything to hit against the sensor. Do not subject the sensor to an impact.
- Make sure that there are no scratches, dirt or stickers on the side of the sensor that faces the driver.
- Do not place any objects in front of the side of the sensor that faces the driver or cover the sensor.

Determining the direction the driver is facing (vehicles with driver monitor sensor)

The direction the driver is facing may not be determined correctly if the following conditions exist:

- There is an object between the driver monitor sensor and the driver's face, such as when the sensor is blocked.
- A part of the driver's face is covered.
- The sensor or the driver's face is exposed to intense light such as sunlight.
- The driving posture is improper.

NOTICE

■ **Precautions for cleaning the driver monitor sensor (vehicles with driver monitor sensor)**

- Gently wipe the sensor with a soft cloth to prevent damage.
- Wipe any excess dirt with a cloth dampened with neutral detergent, all liquids having been wrung out of the cloth. After that, wipe again with a dry cloth.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, glass cleaners, wax, etc.

Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle features

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause the vehicle to rollover.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle roll-over causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles:

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

Additional information for off-road driving

For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:
To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations:

- State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
- State Motor Vehicle Bureau
- Recreational Vehicle Clubs
- U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management

⚠ CAUTION

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death, serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ To prevent the water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- To maintain vehicle balance while driving, position luggage evenly within the luggage compartment.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit –

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

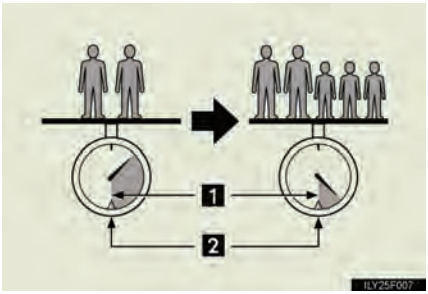
(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 364)

Example based on your vehicle



1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

Vehicles without rear height control air suspension

With third seats — total load capacity: 1315 lb. (595 kg)

1315 lb. - 366 lb. = 949 lb. (595 kg - 166 kg = 429 kg)

Without third seats — total load capacity: 1525 lb. (690 kg)

1525 lb. - 366 lb. = 1159 lb. (690 kg - 166 kg = 524 kg)

Vehicles with rear height control air suspension

Total load capacity: 1280 lb. (580 kg)

1280 lb. - 366 lb. = 914 lb. (580 kg - 166 kg = 414 kg)

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

Vehicles without rear height control air suspension

With third seats

949 lb. - 388 lb. = 561 lb. (429 kg - 176 kg = 253 kg)

Without third seats

1159 lb. - 388 lb. = 771 lb. (524 kg - 176 kg = 348 kg)

Vehicles with rear height control air suspension

914 lb. - 388 lb. = 526 lb. (414 kg - 176 kg = 238 kg)

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

CAUTION

Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

⚠ CAUTION

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
  Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle in the event of a sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident:
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone in the event of a sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be place directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

■ Roof luggage carrier precautions

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent.
Follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions when installing the cross rails or their equivalent.

⚠ CAUTION

Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

When loading cargo

Observe the following precautions:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 752)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened to the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 176lb. (80 kg) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

NOTICE

When loading cargo

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

Total load capacity:

Vehicles without rear height control air suspension

With third seats — 1315 lb. (595 kg)
Without third seats — 1525 lb. (690 kg)

Vehicles with rear height control air suspension

1280 lb. (580 kg)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

Seating capacity:

With third seats — 7 occupants (Front 2, Rear 5)
Without third seats — 5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Towing capacity: 6500 lb. (2948 kg)

Towing capacity means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that your vehicle is able to tow.

Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

■ **Total load capacity and seating capacity**

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.
(→P. 635)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

When driving the vehicle

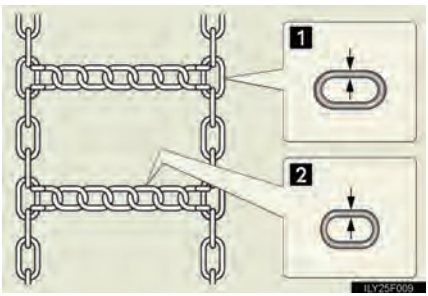
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



Side chain:

1 Side chain
(0.20 in. [5 mm] in diameter)

2 Cross chain
(0.25 in. [6.3 mm] in diameter)

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install tire chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

CAUTION

Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ Fitting tire chains

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer can have an adverse impact on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, you must not overload your vehicle or trailer. You must also ensure that you are using appropriate towing equipment, that the towing equipment has been installed correctly and used properly, and that you employ the requisite driving habits.

Vehicle-trailer stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake performance and setting, trailer brakes, the hitch and hitch systems (if equipped).

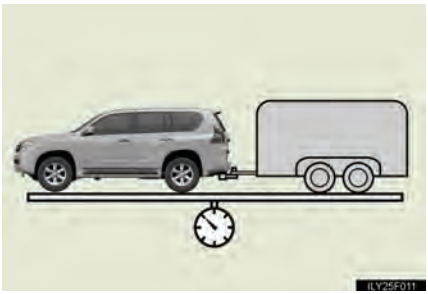
To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with your trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as towing kits, etc.

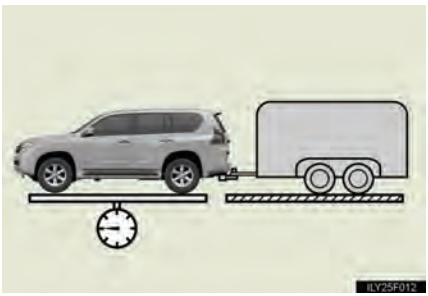
Towing related terms

GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating)



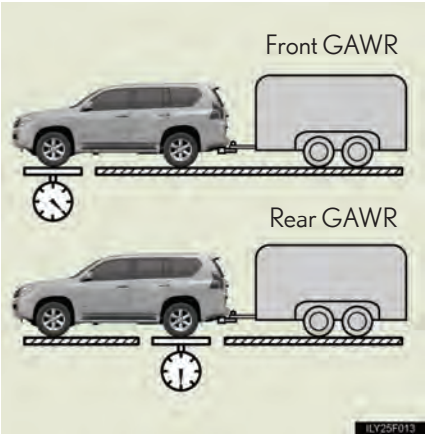
The maximum allowable gross combination weight. The gross combination weight is the sum of the total vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the weight of the trailer being towed (including the cargo in the trailer).

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)



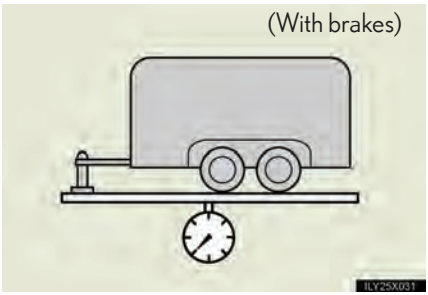
The maximum allowable gross vehicle weight. The gross vehicle weight is the total weight of the vehicle. When towing a trailer, it is the sum of the vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the tongue weight.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)



The maximum allowable gross axle weight. The gross axle weight is the load placed on each axle (front and rear).

TWR (Trailer Weight Rating)



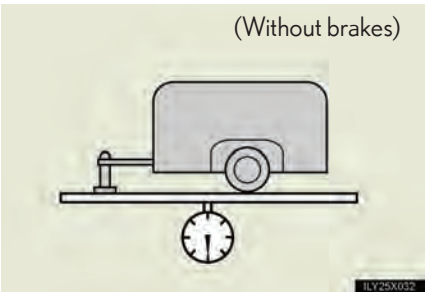
The maximum allowable gross trailer weight. The gross trailer weight is the sum of the trailer weight and the weight of the cargo in the trailer.

TWR is calculated assuming base vehicle with one driver, one front passenger, towing package (if available), hitch and hitch systems (if required).

Additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the vehicle will reduce the trailer weight rating so as not to exceed GCWR, GVWR and GAWR.

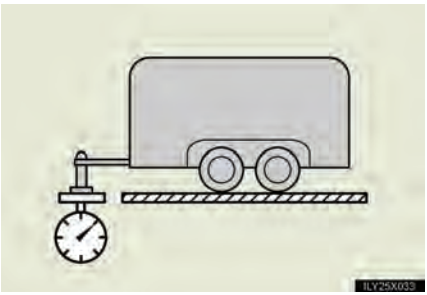
If the gross trailer weight exceeds 3000 lb. (1360 kg), it is recommended to use a trailer with 2 or more axles.

Unbraked TWR (Unbraked Trailer Weight Rating)



The trailer weight rating for towing a trailer without a trailer service brake system.

Tongue Weight



The load placed on the trailer hitch ball. (→P. 376)

Weight limits

- The gross trailer weight must never exceed 6500 lb. (2948 kg).
- The gross combination weight must never exceed 13100 lb. (5492 kg).



- The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the GVWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- The gross axle weight on each axle must never exceed the GAWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- If the gross trailer weight is over the unbraked TWR, trailer service brakes are required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lb. (907 kg), a sway control device with sufficient capacity is required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lb. (2268 kg), a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity is required.

Confirm that the gross trailer weight, gross combination weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and tongue weight are all within the limits.

GCWR*
13100 lb. (5492 kg)

TWR*
6500 lb. (2948 kg)

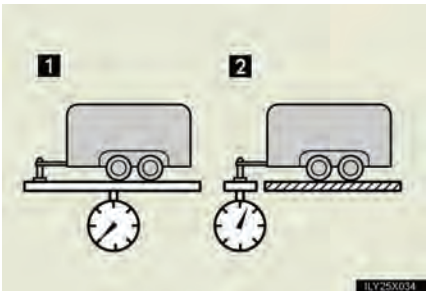
Unbraked TWR*
1000 lb. (453 kg)

*: This model meets the tow-vehicle trailering requirement of SAE International per SAE J2807.

Trailer Tongue Weight

- A recommended tongue weight varies in accordance with the types of trailers or towing as described below.
- To ensure the recommended values shown below, the trailer must be loaded by referring to the following instructions.
  - Tongue Weight

    The gross trailer weight should be distributed so that the tongue weight is 9 % to 11 %. (Tongue weight/Gross trailer weight × 100 = 9 % to 11 %)



1 Gross trailer weight
2 Tongue weight

If using a weight distributing hitch when towing, return the front axle to the same weight as before the trailer connection.

If front axle weight cannot be measured directly, measure the front fender height above the front axle before connection. Adjust weight distributing hitch torque until front fender is returned to the same height as before connection.

The gross trailer weight, gross axle weight and tongue weight can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.

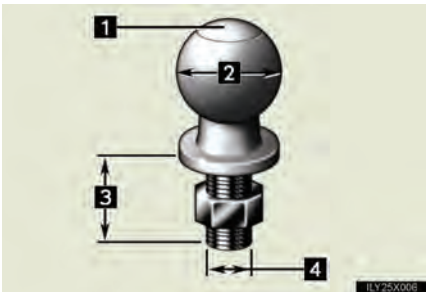
Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

- If you wish to install a trailer hitch, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Use only a hitch that conforms to the gross trailer weight requirement of your vehicle.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coating of grease.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting hole in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

Selecting trailer ball

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.



1 Trailer ball load rating

Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.

2 Ball diameter

Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.

Trailer class	Typical trailer ball size
IV	2 5/16 in.
II and III	2 in.
I	1 7/8 in.

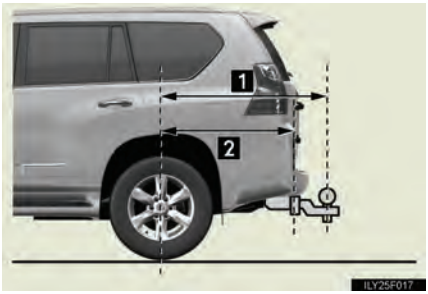
3 Shank length

Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut by at least 2 threads.

4 Shank diameter

Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.

Positions for towing hitch receiver and hitch ball



1 Weight carrying ball position: 50.5 in. (1282.9 mm)

2 Hitch receiver pin hole position: 44.1 in. (1120.4 mm)

Connecting trailer lights



Use the wire harness stored in the rear end under the vehicle body.

Please consult your dealer when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

Connecting and disconnecting a trailer

Stop your vehicle and a trailer in line and perform the following:

● Connecting a trailer

STEP 1 Set the rear height control air suspension to N mode.

STEP 2 Turn off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or the rear height control air suspension.

STEP 3 Connect the trailer.

STEP 4 Turn on the switch that was turned off on STEP 2.

● Disconnecting a trailer

STEP 1 Set the rear height control air suspension to N mode.

STEP 2 Turn off the rear height control air suspension.

STEP 3 Turn off the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

STEP 4 Set the supporting leg of the trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 4 in. (100 mm)

STEP 5 Turn on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

STEP 6 Turn on the rear height control air suspension.

STEP 7 Wait until vehicle height is stabilized.

Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If the hitch does not disconnect, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 7.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. Help to avoid an accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

- Speed limits for towing a trailer vary by state or province. Do not exceed the posted towing speed limit.
- Lexus recommends that the vehicle-trailer speed limit is 65 mph (104 km/h) on a flat, straight, dry road. Do not exceed this limit, the posted towing speed limit or the speed limit for your trailer as set forth in your trailer owner's manual, whichever is lowest. Instability of the towing vehicle-trailer combination (trailer sway) increases as speed increases. Exceeding speed limits may cause loss of control.
- Before starting out, check the trailer lights, tires and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle-trailer combination.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to the right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in the trailer jackknifing and loss of vehicle control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.

- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making a turn.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a wider than normal turning radius.
- Slow down before making a turn, in crosswinds, on wet or slippery surfaces, etc.
  Increasing vehicle speed can destabilize the trailer.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not put the transmission in D.
  Transmission shift range position must be in 5 in the S mode.
- Instability happens more frequently when descending steep or long downhill grades. Before descending, slow down and downshift. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 744)

● Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle's and the trailer's wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in P. Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

STEP 1 Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

STEP 2 Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle's and trailer's wheels.

STEP 3 When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

STEP 4 Apply the parking brake firmly.

STEP 5 Shift into P and turn off the engine.

● When restarting after parking on a slope:

STEP 1 With the transmission in P, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

STEP 2 Shift into 3, 2, L, or R (if reversing).

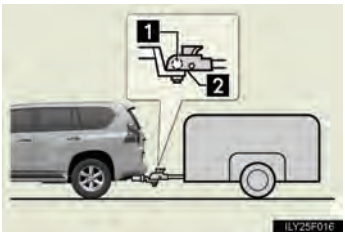
STEP 3 Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

STEP 4 Have someone retrieve the blocks.

Matching trailer ball height to trailer coupler height



No matter which class of tow hitch applies, for a more safe trailer hookup, the trailer ball setup must be the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.



1 Trailer ball

2 Coupler

Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- Ensure that your vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P. 762)
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work as required by law.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle is not level, and check for improper tongue weight, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

■ **AVS (adaptive variable suspension system)**

The suspension can be switched for improvement in driveability. (→P. 321)

■ **Break-in schedule**

If your vehicle is new or equipped with any new power train components (such as an engine, transmission, differential or wheel bearing), Lexus recommends that you do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km).

After the vehicle has been driven for over 500 miles (800 km), you can start towing. However, for the next 500 miles (800 km), drive the vehicle at a speed of less than 50 mph (80 km/h) when towing a trailer, and avoid full throttle acceleration.

■ **Maintenance**

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.

■ **If trailer sway occurs**

One or more factors (crosswinds, passing vehicles, rough roads, etc.) can adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing instability.

- If trailer swaying occurs:
  - Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead.
    Do not try to control trailer swaying by turning the steering wheel.
  - Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed.
    Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize.

● After the trailer swaying has stopped:

- Stop in a safe place. Get all occupants out of the vehicle.
- Check the tires of the vehicle and the trailer.
- Check the load in the trailer.
  Make sure the load has not shifted.
  Make sure the tongue weight is appropriate, if possible.
- Check the load in the vehicle.
  Make sure the vehicle is not overloaded after occupants get in.

If you cannot find any problems, the speed at which trailer swaying occurred is beyond the limit of your particular vehicle-trailer combination.
Drive at a lower speed to prevent instability. Remember that swaying of the towing vehicle-trailer increases as speed increases.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Trailer towing precautions

● To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury. Vehicle stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake setting and performance, and the hitch. Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer.

● Set the vehicle height to the LO mode and turn off the rear height control air suspension when you connect a trailer, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Do not exceed the TWR, unbraked TWR, GCWR, GVWR or GAWR.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lb. (907 kg), a sway control device with sufficient capacity is required.
- If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lb. (2268 kg), a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity is required.
- Adjust the tongue weight within the appropriate range. Place heavier loads as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- Do not exceed 65 mph (104 km/h), the posted towing speed limit or the speed limit for your trailer as set forth in your trailer owner's manual, whichever is lowest. Slow down sufficiently before making a turn, in crosswinds, on wet or slippery surface, etc. to help avoid an accident. If you experience a vehicle-trailer instability from reducing a certain speed, slow down and make sure you keep your vehicle speed under the speed of which you experience the instability.
- Do not make jerky, abrupt or sharp turns.
- Do not apply the brakes suddenly as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of vehicle control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue weight capacities.
- Do not use cruise control when towing.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Vehicle-trailer instability is more likely on steep long down hills. Before descending steep or long downhill grades, slow down and downshift. Do not make sudden downshifts when descending steep or long downhill grades. Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

⚠ CAUTION

Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be physically capable of towing a higher weight, the operator must determine the maximum weight rating of the particular hitch assembly and never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer-hitch. Exceeding the maximum weight rating set by the trailer-hitch manufacturer can cause an accident resulting in death or serious personal injuries.

When towing a trailer

Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to any applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

- If the gross trailer weight exceeds unbraked TWR, trailer brakes are required. Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

⚠ NOTICE

When installing a trailer hitch

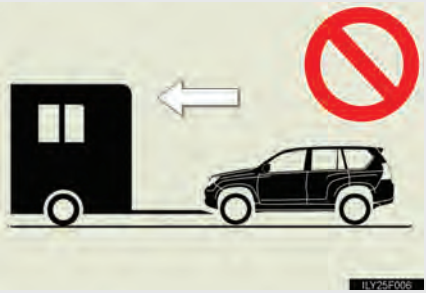
Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.

Do not directly splice trailer lights

Do not directly splice trailer lights. Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



⚠ NOTICE

To avoid serious damage to your vehicle

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system 392

Rear automatic air conditioning system 407

Rear window defogger switch..... 411

Windshield wiper de-icer..... 412

3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system..... 413

Using the radio 415

Using the CD player..... 423

Playing MP3 and WMA discs 431

Operating an iPod..... 440

Operating a USB memory..... 448

Optimal use of the audio system..... 457

Using the AUX port..... 459

Using the steering wheel audio switches..... 460

3-3. Using the Bluetooth® audio system

Bluetooth® audio system 464
Using the Bluetooth® audio system 468
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 474
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 477
Bluetooth® audio system setup..... 484

3-4. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system for cellular phones..... 485
Using the hands-free system (for cellular phones) 489
Making a phone call 497
Setting a cellular phone 502
Security and system setup..... 507
Using the phone book..... 511

3-5. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 519
- Personal/interior light main switch 520
- Personal/interior lights..... 521

3-6. Using the storage features

List of storage features..... 523
- Glove box 525
- Console box..... 526
- Coin holder 528
- Bottle holders/door pockets..... 529
- Cup holders 530
- Auxiliary boxes 533

3-7. Other interior features

Cool box 535
Sun visors 538
Vanity mirror 539
Clock..... 540
Conversation mirror..... 541
Power outlet (12 V DC)..... 542
Power outlet (120 V AC)..... 544
Heated steering wheel 549
Seat heaters and ventilators 551
Armrest 554
Coat hooks 555
Floor mat 556
Luggage compartment features..... 558
Garage door opener 567
Compass 575
Safety Connect 580

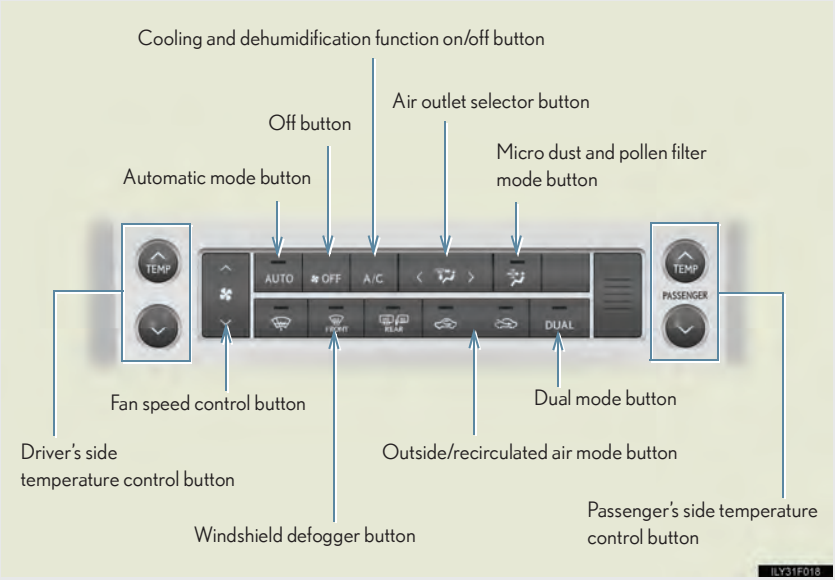
Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Vehicles with a navigation system

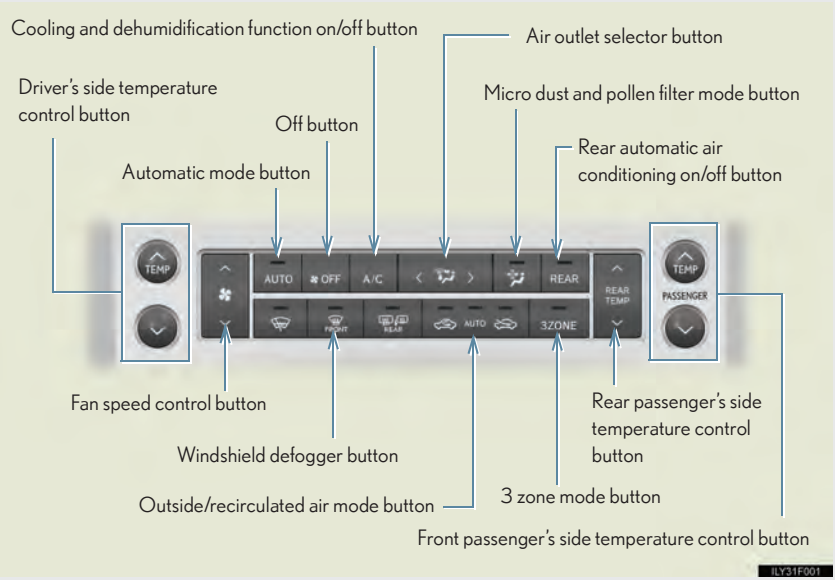
Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Vehicles without a navigation system

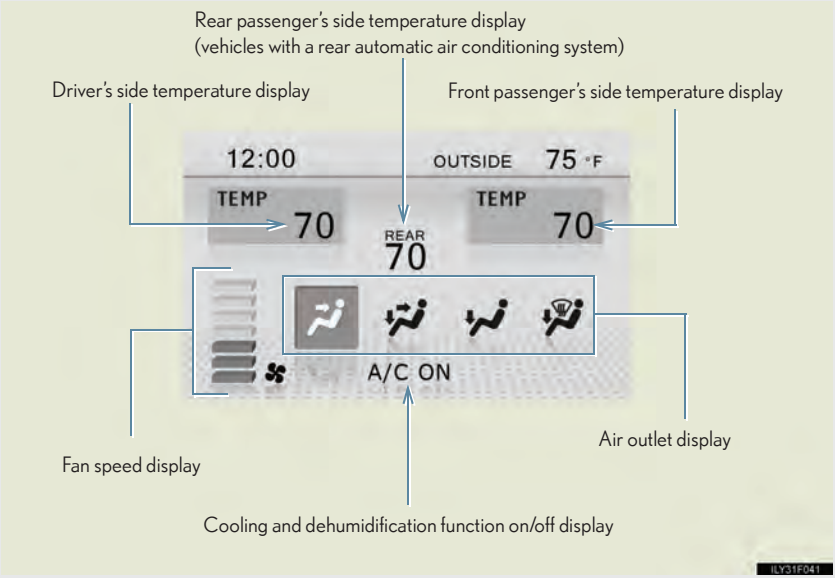
Control panel (vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system)



Control panel (vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system)



Multi-information display (Accessory meters)



Using the automatic air conditioning system

Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 Press the "AUTO" button.

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press "∧" on the temperature control button on the driver's side to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

When the "DUAL" button is pressed (the indicator on the "DUAL" button is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

Vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 Press the "AUTO" button.

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press "∧" on the temperature control button on the driver's side to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

When the "3ZONE" button is pressed (the indicator on the "3ZONE" button is on), the front passenger's side temperature control button is pressed or "REAR/TEMP" button is pressed, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 407) can be adjusted separately.

Adjusting the settings manually

Basic setting

Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 To turn on the air conditioning system and adjust the fan speed, press "∧" on  to increase the fan speed and "∨" to decrease the fan speed.

Press  to turn the fan off.

STEP 2 To adjust the temperature setting, press "∧" on the temperature control button on the driver's side to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time the "DUAL" button is pressed.

When the "DUAL" button is pressed (the indicator on the "DUAL" button is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

STEP 3 To change the air outlets, press "<" or ">" on  .

The air outlets used are switched each time either side of the button is pressed. The air flow shown on the display indicates the following:

Vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 To turn on the air conditioning system and adjust the fan speed, press "∧" on  to increase the fan speed and "∨" to decrease the fan speed.

Press  to turn the fan off.

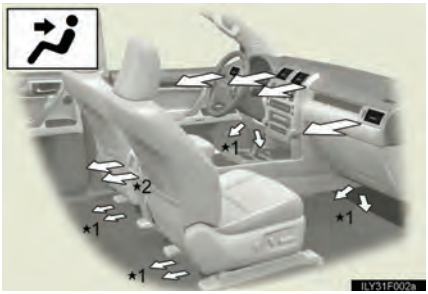
STEP 2 To adjust the temperature setting, press "∧" on the temperature control button on the driver's side to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time the "3ZONE" button is pressed.

When the "3ZONE" button is pressed (the indicator on the "3ZONE" button is on), the front passenger's side temperature control button is pressed or the "REAR/TEMP" button is pressed, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 407) can be adjusted separately.

STEP 3 To change the air outlets, press "<" or ">" on  .

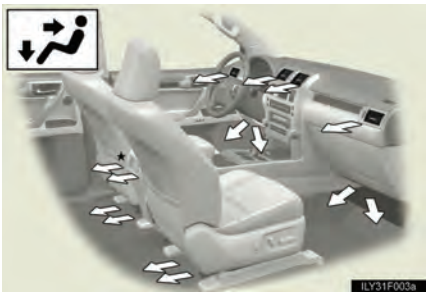
The air outlets used are switched each time either side of the button is pressed. The air flow shown on the display indicates the following:



Air flows to the upper body.

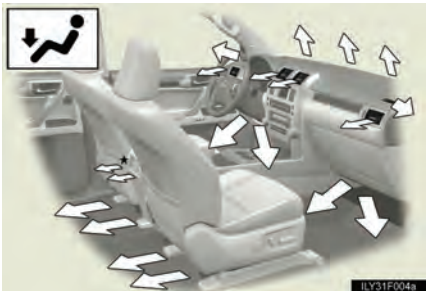
*1: Only the in automatic mode (Air may not always flow.)

*2: Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system



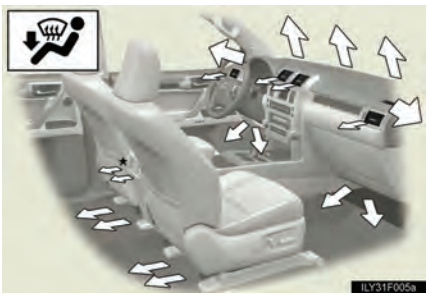
Air flows to the upper body and feet.

*: Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system



Air flows to the feet.

*: Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

The air intake is automatically switched to (outside air) mode.

The air conditioning system operates automatically.

*: Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system

Press  .

The mode switches between (recirculated air mode) and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

Vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system

Press  .

The mode switches among (recirculated air mode), automatic and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.
When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

Changing the rear seat settings (vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system)

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press "∧" on the "REAR/TEMP" button to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time the "3ZONE" button is pressed.

Defogging the windshield

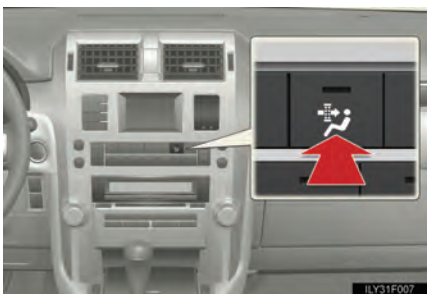


Defogging

The air intake is automatically switched to (outside air) mode. It is not possible to recirculated air mode when the switch is on.

The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Micro dust and pollen filter mode button



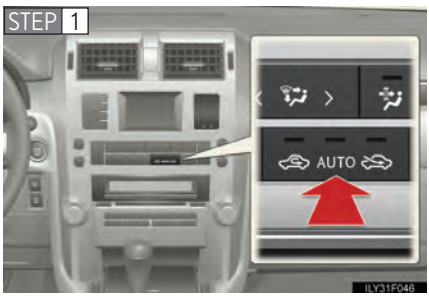
Operates micro dust and pollen filter on/off.

Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

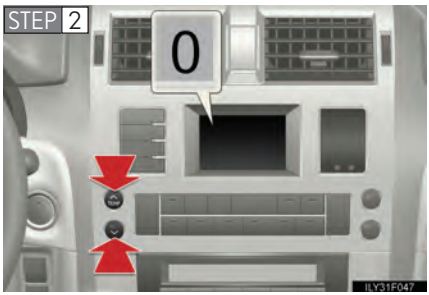
Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode (vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system)

STEP 1



Press  for 2 or more seconds.

STEP 2

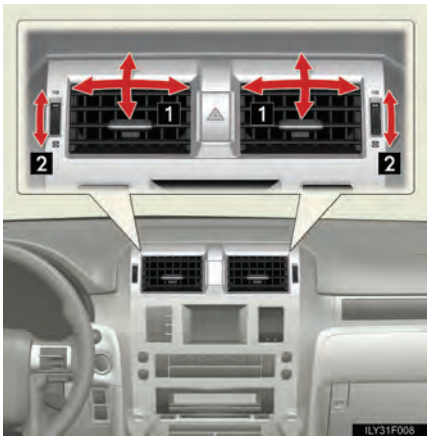


Press "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on the temperature control button on the driver's side.

From - 3 (low) to 3 (high) can be set.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

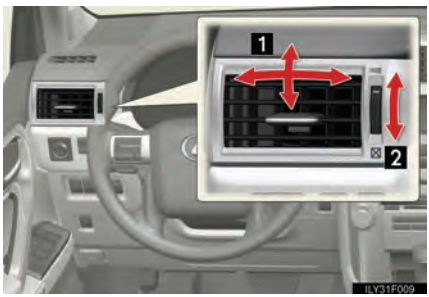
Front center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

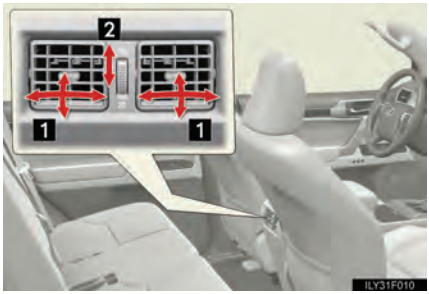
Front side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

Rear outlets (vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system)



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ **Air conditioning system settings**

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned off.

Air conditioning system settings are memorized individually on each electronic key, so the settings reproduced will be specific to the key that is used.

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

- Immediately after the switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting, the inside temperature, outside temperature, etc.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control (vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system)**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

■ **Micro dust and pollen filter**

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur.
  - Outside air mode does not switch to  (recirculated air) mode.
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press  .

■ **When outside air temperature is below 32 °F (0 °C)**

The cooling and dehumidification function may not operate even when the "A/C" button is pressed.

■ **When the "A/C ON" in the multi-information display (accessory meter) flashes**

Press the "A/C" button and turn off the cooling and dehumidification function and turn it on again. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light continues to flash. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Air conditioning odors

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in AUTO mode.

Customization

Settings (e.g. enable/disable automatic operation of the air conditioning compressor when the "AUTO" switch ON) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 782)

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

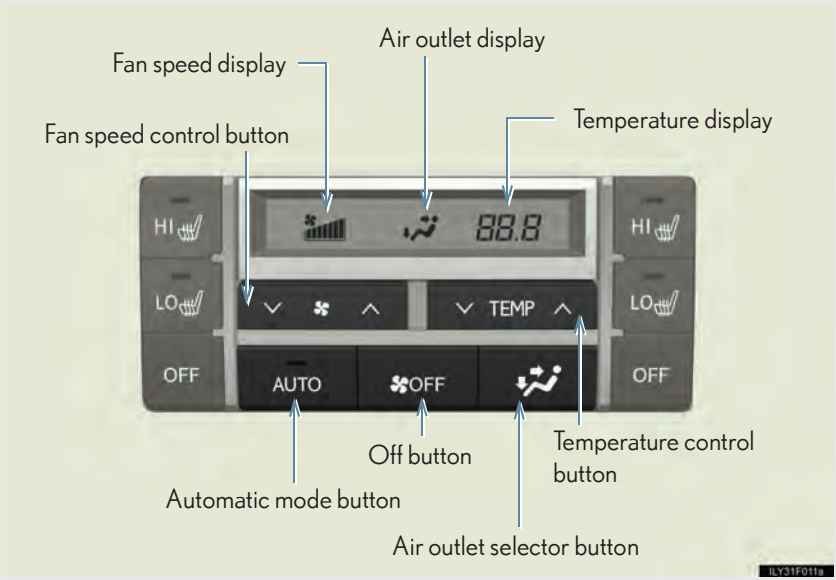
⚠ NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

Rear automatic air conditioning system*

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



Using automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 Press the "AUTO" button.

The air conditioning system will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be adjusted automatically.

STEP 2 Press "∧" on the "TEMP" button to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the settings manually

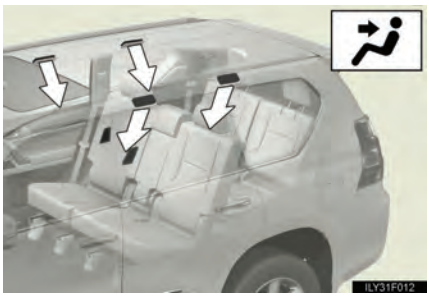
Adjusting the temperature setting

Press "∧" on the "TEMP" button to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

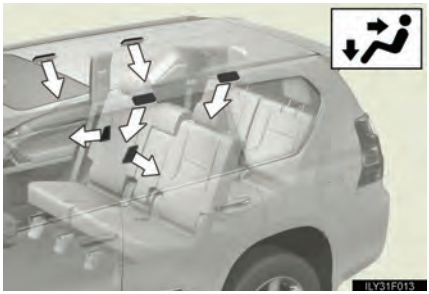
Changing the air outlets

Press the air outlet selector button.

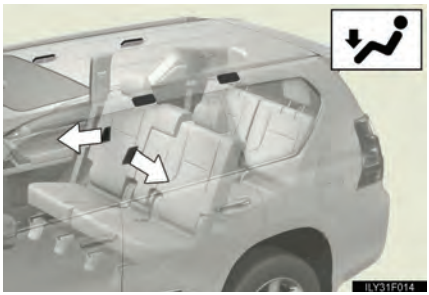
The air outlets used are switched each time either side of the button is pressed. The air flow shown on the display indicates the following:



Air flows to the upper body.



Air flows to the upper body and feet.



Air flows to the feet.

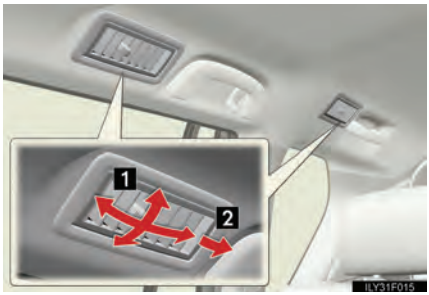
Adjusting the fan speed

Press "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on .

Pressing turns off the fan.

Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

Roof side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob fully to the back of the vehicle to close the vent.

■ Air conditioning system settings

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned off.

Air conditioning system settings are memorized individually on each electronic key, so the settings reproduced will be specific to the key that is used.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

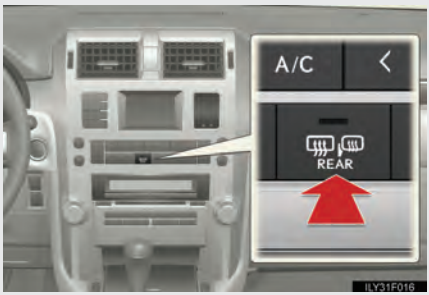
Rear window defogger switch

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system



Turns the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers on/off.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after their operation time. The operation time varies depending on the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

■ The defoggers can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ The outside rear view mirror defoggers

Turning the rear window defogger on will turn the outside rear view mirror defoggers on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Windshield wiper de-icer

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system



Turns the windshield wiper de-icer on/off

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

■ The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the lower part of the windshield or the side of the front pillars, as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system

CD player with a changer and AM/FM radio



Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 415
Using the CD player	P. 423
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 431
Operating an iPod	P. 440
Operating a USB memory	P. 448
Optimal use of the audio system	P. 457
Using the AUX port	P. 459
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 460

Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

CAUTION

Certification

- Part 15 of the FCC Rules

  FCC Warning:
  Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

- Laser products

  - Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself.
    This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
  - This product utilizes a laser.
    Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

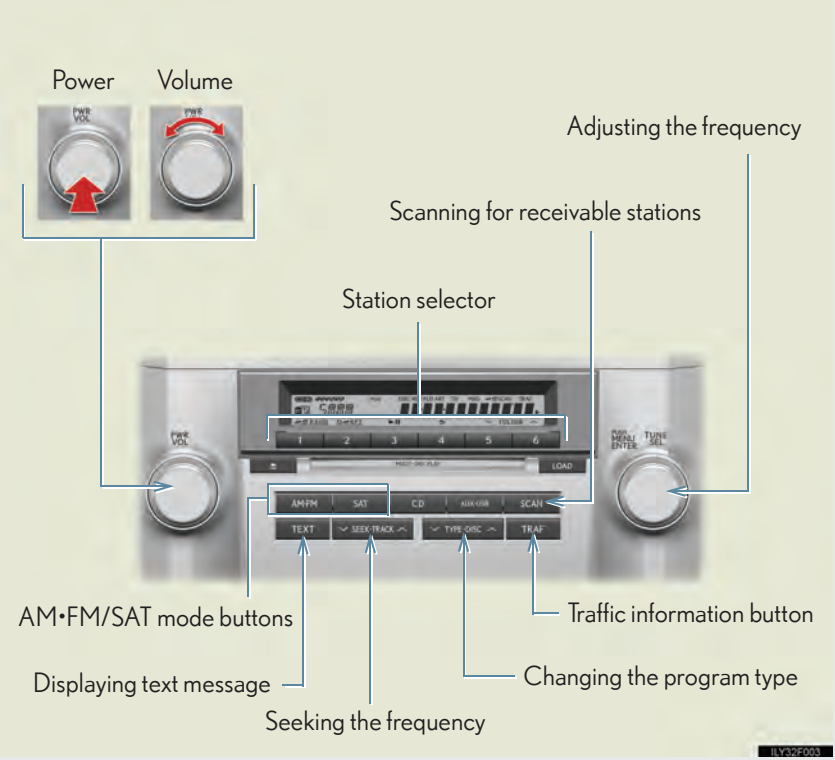
NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary with the engine off.

To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.


Power
Volume
Adjusting the frequency
Scanning for receivable stations
Station selector
AM•FM/SAT mode buttons
Displaying text message
Seeking the frequency
Changing the program type
Traffic information button
ILY32F003

Setting station presets (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

STEP 1 Search for the desired stations by turning the "TUNE/SEL" knob or pressing "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button.

STEP 2 Press and hold the button (from the 1 button to the 6 button) the station is to be set to until you hear a beep.

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Press and hold the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep.
Preset stations will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button again.

■ Scanning all the radio stations within range

STEP 1 Press the "SCAN" button.
All the stations with reception will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button again.

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

STEP 1 Press "∧" or "∨" on the "TYPE•DISC" button during FM reception.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- "ROCK"
- "EASYLIS" (Easy listening)
- "CLS/JAZZ" (Classical music and Jazz)
- "R & B" (Rhythm and Blues)
- "INFORM" (Information)
- "RELIGION"
- "MISC" (Miscellaneous)
- "ALERT" (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO PTY" appears on the display.

STEP 2 Press the "SCAN" button, or "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button.

The radio seeks or scans for stations of the relevant program type.

Displaying radio station names

Press the "TEXT" button.

Displaying radio text messages

Press the "TEXT" button twice.

A text message is displayed when "MSG" is shown on the screen.

If the text continues past the end of the display, ▶ is displayed. Press and hold the "TEXT" button until you hear a beep.

XM® Satellite Radio (if equipped)

Receiving XM® Satellite Radio

STEP 1 Press the "SAT" button.

The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed:
"SAT1" → "SAT2" → "SAT3"

STEP 2 Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob to select the desired channel in all the categories or press "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button to select the desired channel in the current category.

Setting XM® Satellite Radio channel presets

Select the desired channel. Press and hold the button (from the 1 button to the 6 button) the channel is to be set to until you hear a beep.

Changing the channel category

Press "∧" or "∨" on the "TYPE•DISC" button.

Scanning the XM® Satellite Radio channels

- Scanning the channels in the current category

  STEP 1 Press the "SCAN" button.

  STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the button again.

- Scanning the preset channels

  STEP 1 Press and hold the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep.

  STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, press the button again.

Displaying text information

Press the "TEXT" button.

The display will show up to 10 characters.

The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed:

- CH NAME
- TITLE (SONG/PROGRAM TITLE)
- NAME (ARTIST NAME/FEATURE)
- CH NUMBER

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Cargo loaded on the roof luggage carrier, especially metal objects, may adversely affect the reception of XM® Satellite Radio.
- It is difficult to maintain perfect radio reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear spoiler and the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ **Receiving XM® Satellite Radio**

An XM® Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states and 10 Canadian provinces.

- XM® subscriptions
  For detailed information about XM® Satellite Radio or to subscribe:
  U.S.A. —
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.com or call 1-877-515-3987.
  Canada —
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-515-3987.
- Radio ID

  You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob, and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.
- Satellite tuner
  The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM® Satellite Radio.

■ **If the satellite radio does not operate normally**

If a problem occurs with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the display. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
UNAUTH	You have not subscribed to the XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all the free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM® Satellite Radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.

OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.
CH UNAVL	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

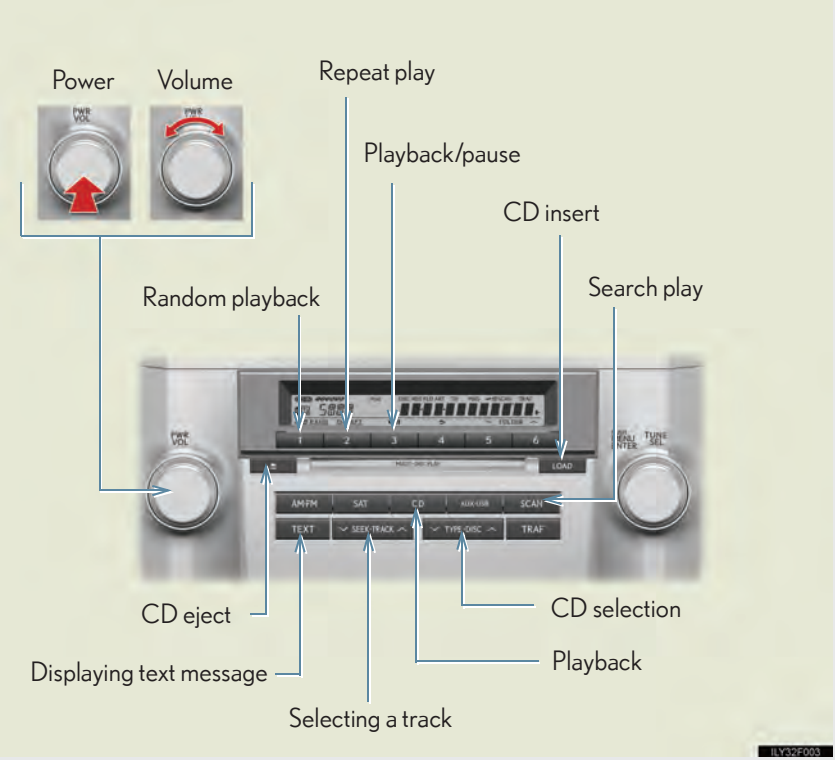
Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

■ **Certifications for the radio tuner**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.


Power
Volume
Repeat play
Playback/pause
CD insert
Search play
Random playback
CD eject
Displaying text message
Selecting a track
CD selection
Playback
ILY32F003

Loading a CD

■ Loading a CD

STEP 1 Press the “LOAD” button.

“WAIT” is shown on the display.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from “WAIT” to “LOAD”.

■ Loading multiple CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold the “LOAD” button until you hear a beep.

“WAIT” is shown on the display.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from “WAIT” to “LOAD”.

The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the CD is being inserted.

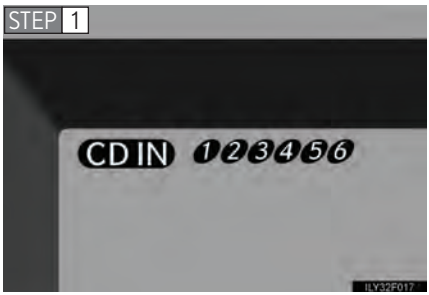
STEP 3 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert the next CD.

Repeat the procedure for the remaining CDs.

To cancel the operation, press the “LOAD” button. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

Ejecting CDs

Ejecting a CD



To select the CD to be ejected, press "∧" or "∨" on the "TYPE•DISC" button.

The selected disc number is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Press ⏏ and remove the CD.

Ejecting all the CDs

Press and hold ⏏ until you hear a beep, and then remove the CDs.

Selecting, fast-forwarding, reversing and scanning tracks

Selecting a track

Press "∧" to move up or "∨" to move down using the "SEEK•TRACK" button until the desired track number is displayed.

Fast-forwarding and reversing tracks

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button until you hear a beep.

Scanning tracks

STEP 1 Press the "SCAN" button.

The first ten seconds of each track will be played.

To cancel, press the "SCAN" button again.

STEP 2 Press the button again when the desired track is reached.

Selecting a CD

Selecting a CD to play

To select the desired CD, press "∧" or "∨" on the "TYPE•DISC" button.

Scanning loaded CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first track on each CD will be played.

To cancel, press the "SCAN" button again.

STEP 2 Press the button again when the desired CD is reached.

Playing and pausing tracks

To play or pause a track, press the 3 (►II) button.

Random playback

Current CD

Press the 1 (RAND) button.

Songs are played in random order.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

All CDs

Press and hold the 1 (RAND) button until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in random order.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

Repeat play

Repeating a track

Press the 2 (RPT) button.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Repeating all of the tracks on a CD

Press and hold the 2 (RPT) button until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Switching the display

Press the "TEXT" button.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → CD title → Track title

CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

Display

Up to 12 characters can be displayed at a time.
If there are 13 or more characters, pressing and holding the "TEXT" button for 1 second or more enables to display the remaining characters.
A maximum of 24 characters can be displayed.
If the "TEXT" button is pressed for more than 1 second again or has not been operated for more than 6 seconds, the display will return to the first 12 characters.

Depending on the contents recorded, the characters may not be displayed properly or may not be displayed at all.

■ **When "ERROR" or "WAIT" is shown on the display**

"ERROR": This indicates a trouble either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

"WAIT": This indicates that operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press the "CD" button. If the CD still cannot be played back, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not be used.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ **If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods of time**

The discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

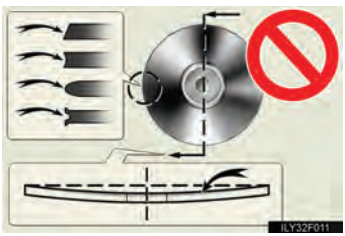
NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs, 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters or Dual Discs. Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD load/eject function.



- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm)



- Low-quality and deformed CDs



- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

⚠ NOTICE

■ CD player precautions

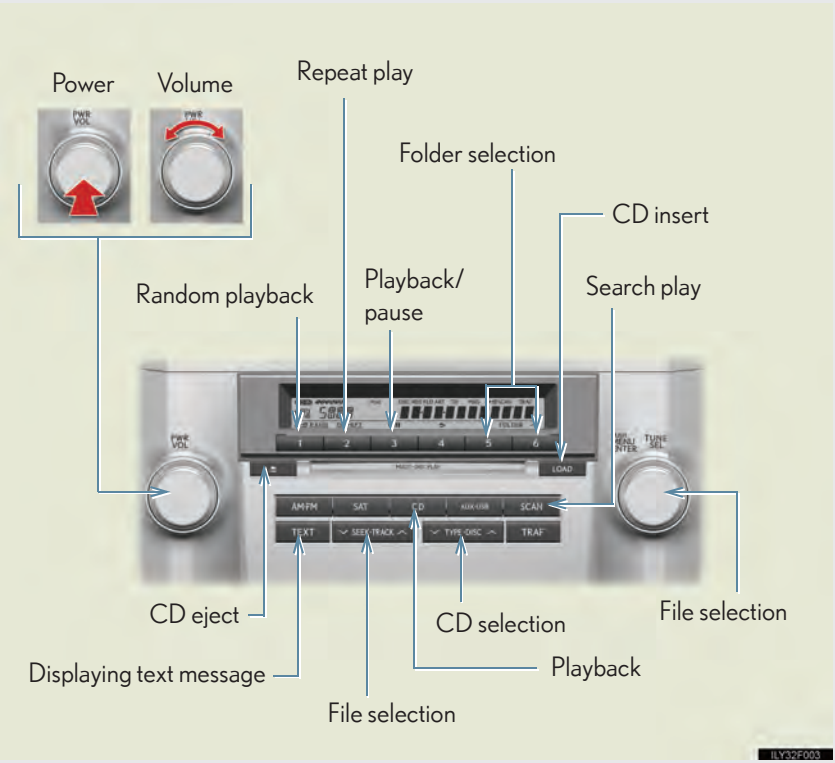
Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.



- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.

Playing MP3 and WMA discs



Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 424, 425

Selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 426

Selecting and scanning a folder

Selecting a folder one at a time

Press the 6 (∧) or 5 (∨) button to select the desired folder.

Returning to the first folder

Press and hold the 5 (∨) button until you hear a beep.

Scanning the first file of all the folders

STEP 1 Press and hold the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep.
The first ten seconds of the first file in each folder will be played.

STEP 2 When the desired folder is reached, press the "SCAN" button again.

Fast-forwarding and reversing files

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button until you hear a beep.

Selecting and scanning files

Selecting a file

Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob or press "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button to select the desired file.

Scanning the files in a folder

Press the "SCAN" button.

The first ten seconds of each file will be played.

To cancel, press the "SCAN" button again.

When the desired file is reached, press the "SCAN" button again.

Playing and pausing files

To play or pause a file, press the 3 (►II) button.

Random playback

Playing files from a folder in random order

Press the 1 (RAND) button.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

Playing all the files from a disc in random order

Press and hold the 1 (RAND) button until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

Repeat play

Repeating a file

Press the 2 (RPT) button.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Repeating all the files in a folder

Press and hold the 2 (RPT) button until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Switching the display

Press the "TEXT" button.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name →
Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name

■ **CD player protection feature**

→P. 427

■ **Display**

→P. 427

■ **When "ERROR", "WAIT" or "NO MUSIC" is shown on the display**

"ERROR": This indicates a problem either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

"WAIT": This indicates that operation is stopped due to a high temperatures inside the player. Wait for a while and then press the "CD" button. If the CD still cannot be played back, contact your Lexus dealer.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the CD.

■ **Discs that can be used**

→P. 428

■ **Lens cleaners**

→P. 428

■ **If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods of time**

→P. 428

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

  As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

  ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

  The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

  WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

  When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

  Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

  If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

→P. 429

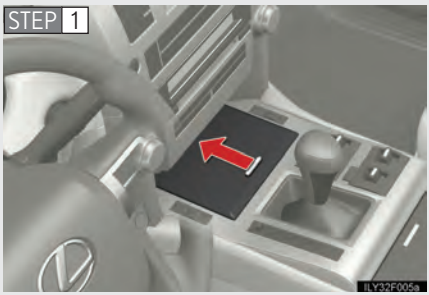
■ **CD player precautions**

→P. 430

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

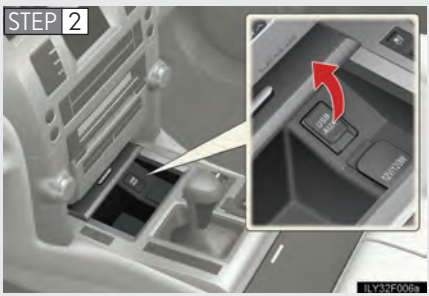
Connecting an iPod

STEP 1



Slide the auxiliary box lid.

STEP 2

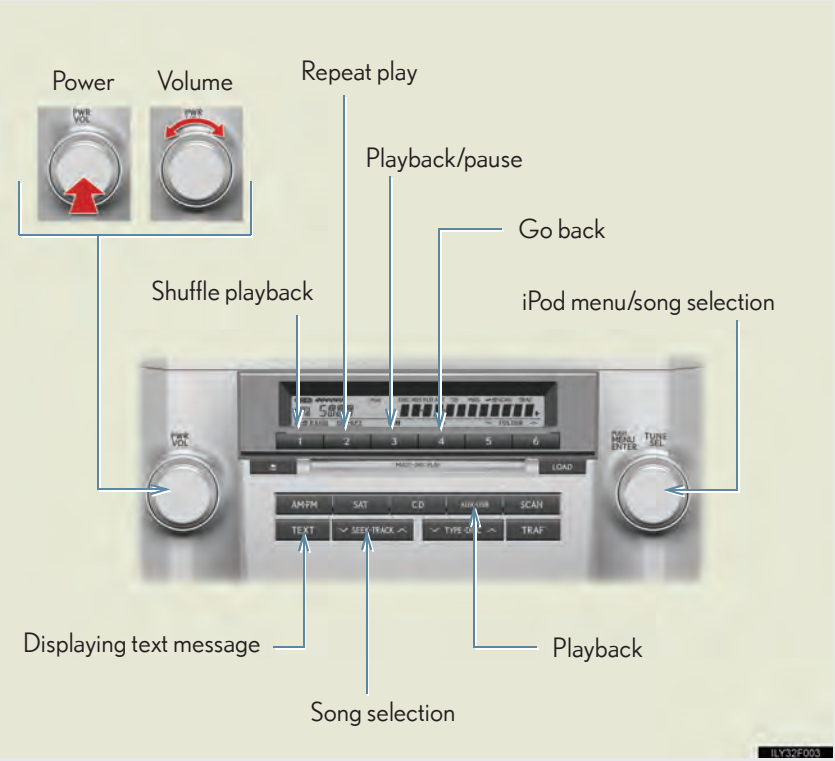


Open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

STEP 3 Press the "AUX•USB" button.

Control panel



Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob to select iPod menu mode.

STEP 2 Turning the "TUNE/SEL" knob changes the play mode in the following order:
"PLAYLISTS" → "ARTISTS" → "ALBUMS" → "SONGS" → "PODCASTS" → "GENRES" → "COMPOSERS" → "AUDIOBOOKS"

STEP 3 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob to select the desired play mode.

Play mode list

Play mode	First selection	Second selection	Third selection	Fourth selection
"PLAYLISTS"	Playlists select	Songs select	-	-
"ARTISTS"	Artists select	Albums select	Songs select	-
"ALBUMS"	Albums select	Songs select	-	-
"SONGS"	Songs select	-	-	-
"PODCASTS"	Albums select	Songs select	-	-
"GENRES"	Genre select	Artists select	Albums select	Songs select
"COMPOSERS"	Composers select	Albums select	Songs select	-
"AUDIOBOOKS"	Songs select	-	-	-

Selecting a list

STEP 1 Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob to display the first selection list.

STEP 2 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob to select the desired item.
Pressing the knob changes to the second selection list.

STEP 3 Repeat the same procedure to select the desired song name.
To return to the previous selection list, select "GO BACK" or press the 4 (⮌) button.

Selecting songs

Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob or press "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button to select the desired song.

Playing and pausing songs

To play or pause a song, press the 3 (⏯) button.

Fast-forwarding and rewinding songs

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button until you hear a beep.

Shuffle playback

■ **Playing songs from one playlist or album in random order**

Press the 1 (RAND) button.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

■ **Playing songs from all the playlists or albums in random order**

Press and hold the 1 (RAND) button until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

Repeat play

Press the 2 (RPT) button.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Switching the display

Press the "TEXT" button.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → Album title → Track title → Artist name

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

STEP 1 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob to enter iPod menu mode.

STEP 2 Pressing the "TUNE/SEL" knob changes sound modes. (→P. 457)

■ About iPod

- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trade mark of Apple inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

■ iPod problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it.
For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

■ Display

→P. 427

■ Error messages

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

"EMPTY": This indicates that an empty playlist is selected.

"UPDATE": This indicates that the version of the iPod is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod software to the latest version.

■ Compatible models

Model	Generation	Software version
iPod	5th generation	Ver. 1.2.0 or higher
iPod nano	1st generation	Ver. 1.3.0 or higher
	2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or higher
	3rd generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher
iPod touch	1st generation	Ver. 1.1.0 or higher
iPod classic	1st generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher

Depending on differences between models or software version etc., some models listed above might be incompatible with this system.
iPod 4th generation and earlier models are not compatible with this system.
iPhone, iPod mini, iPod shuffle and iPod photo are not compatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum number of lists in device: 9999
- Maximum number of songs in device: 65535
- Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not connect iPod or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

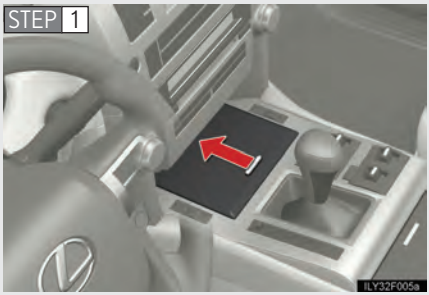
■ To prevent damage to iPod

- Do not leave iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected as this may damage the iPod or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the iPod or its terminal.

Connecting a USB memory enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

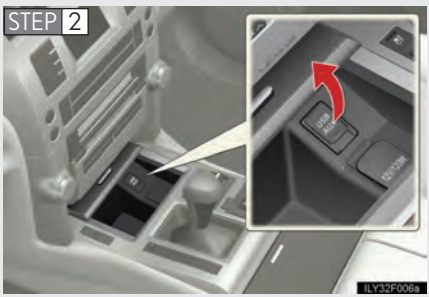
Connecting a USB memory

STEP 1



Slide the auxiliary box lid.

STEP 2

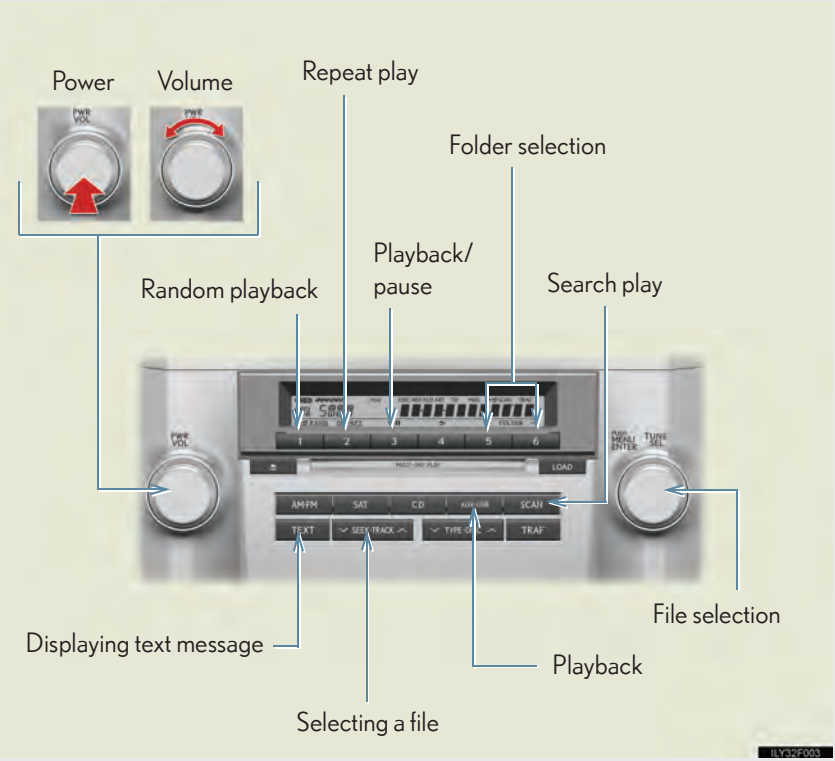


Open the cover and connect a USB memory.

Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

STEP 3 Press the "AUX•USB" button.

Control panel



Selecting and scanning a folder

Selecting folders one at a time

Press the 6 (∧) or 5 (∨) button to select the desired folder.

Returning to the first folder

Press and hold the 5 (∨) button until you hear a beep.

Scanning the first file of all the folders

STEP 1 Press and hold the "SCAN" button until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first file in each folder will be played.

STEP 2 When the desired folder is reached, press the "SCAN" button again.

Selecting and scanning files

Selecting a file

Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob or press "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button to select the desired file.

Scanning the files in a folder

Press the "SCAN" button.

The first ten seconds of each file will be played.

To cancel, press the "SCAN" button again.

When the desired file is reached, press the "SCAN" button again.

Playing and pausing files

To play or pause a file, press the 3 (►II) button.

Fast-forwarding and rewinding files

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button until you hear a beep.

Random playback

■ Playing files from a folder in random order

Press the 1 (RAND) button.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

■ Playing all the files from a USB memory in random order

Press and hold the 1 (RAND) button until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

Repeat play

■ Repeating a file

Press the 2 (RPT) button.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

■ Repeating all the files in a folder

Press and hold the 2 (RPT) button until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Switching the display

Press the “TEXT” button.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order: Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name

---

■ USB memory functions

Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. Disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve some malfunctions.

■ Display

→P. 427

■ Error messages

“ERROR”: This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

“NO MUSIC”: This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

■ USB memory

● Compatible devices

USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback

● Compatible device formats

The following device formats can be used:

• USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12mbps)
• File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
• Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not connect USB players or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to USB memory

- Do not leave USB memory in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.



1 Displays the current mode

2 Changes the following settings:

- Sound quality and volume balance
  →P. 458

  The sound quality and balance setting can be changed to produce the best sound.
- Automatic Sound Levelizer on/off
  →P. 458

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

Changing sound quality modes

Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pressing the button changes sound modes in the following order:

"BAS" → "MID" → "TRE" → "FAD" → "BAL" → "ASL"

Adjusting sound quality

Turning the "TUNE/SEL" knob adjusts the level.

Mode displayed	Sound quality mode	Level	Turn counter-clockwise	Turn clockwise
"BAS"	Bass*	-5 to 5	Low	High
"MID"	Mid-range*	-5 to 5		
"TRE"	Treble*	-5 to 5		
"FAD"	Front/rear volume balance	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
"BAL"	Left/right volume balance	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each audio mode.

Turning the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

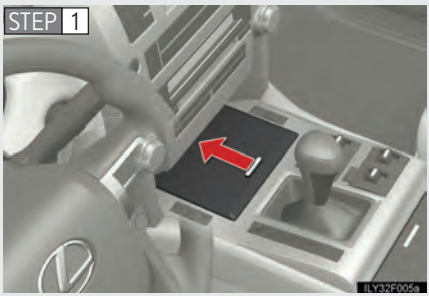
Turning the "TUNE/SEL" knob clockwise turns on the ASL, and turning the "TUNE/SEL" knob counterclockwise turns off the ASL.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

Using the AUX port

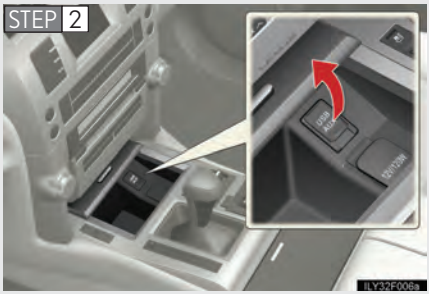
This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Slide the auxiliary box lid.

STEP 2



Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 3 Press the "AUX•USB" button.

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



1 Increases/decreases volume

2 Radio mode: Selects a radio station

CD mode: Selects a track, file (MP3 and WMA) and disc

Bluetooth® audio mode: Selects a track and album

iPod mode: Selects a song

USB memory mode: Selects a file and folder

3 Turns the power on, selects an audio source

Turning the power on

Press the "MODE" button when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

Changing the audio source

Press the "MODE" button when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, that mode will be skipped.

FM1 → FM2 → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3 → CD player → Bluetooth® audio → AUX → iPod or USB memory → AM → FM1

Adjusting the volume

Press "+" on  to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold down the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" button to select radio mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the button until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file or song

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" button to select CD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select the desired track/file or song.

Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" button to select Bluetooth® audio mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" button to select USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a disc in the CD player

STEP 1 Press the "MODE" button to select CD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

■ Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press  again.

CAUTION

■ To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

Bluetooth® audio system

The Bluetooth® audio system enables you to enjoy music played on a portable digital audio player (portable player) from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system

Title	Page
Using the Bluetooth® audio system	P. 468
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player	P. 474
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player	P. 477
Bluetooth® audio system setup	P. 484

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a portable player that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the portable player is switched off
- If the portable player is not connected
- If the portable player's battery is low
- If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box
- If metal is covering or touching the portable player

■ **When transferring ownership of the vehicle**

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 509)

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

- Bluetooth® specifications:
  Ver. 1.2, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 2.0+EDR or higher)
- Following Profiles:
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Ver. 1.3 or higher recommended)

Portable players must correspond to the above specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

■ **Certification for the Bluetooth® audio system**

FCC ID: AJDK018
IC ID: 775E-K018
MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure. This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and legs).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Caution while driving

Do not connect portable players or operate the controls.

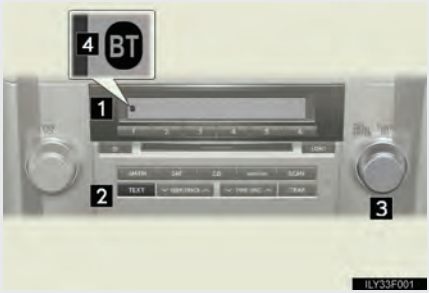
⚠ NOTICE

To prevent damage to portable players

Do not leave portable players in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.

Using the Bluetooth® audio system

Audio unit



1 Display
A message, name, number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

2 Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

3 Selects items such as menu and number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item

4 Bluetooth® connection condition

If "BT" is not displayed, the Bluetooth® audio system cannot be used.

Operating the system using voice commands

By following voice guidance instructions output from the speaker, voice commands enable to the operation of the Bluetooth® audio system without the need to check the display or operate the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Operation procedure when using voice commands

Press the talk switch and follow voice guidance instructions.

Auxiliary commands when using voice commands

The following auxiliary commands can be used when operating the system using a voice command:

"Cancel": Exits the Bluetooth® audio system
"Repeat": Repeats the previous voice guidance instruction
"Go back": Returns to the previous procedure
"Help": Reads aloud the function summary if a help comment is registered for the selected function

Using the Bluetooth® audio system for the first time

Before using the Bluetooth® audio system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth® enabled portable player in the system. Follow the procedure below to register (pair) a portable player:

STEP 1 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob and select "BT•A MENU" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Press the talk switch or select "BT•A Setup" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

The introductory guidance and portable player name registration instructions are heard.

STEP 3 Select "Pair Audio Player (Pair Audio)" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 4 Register a portable player name by either of the following methods:

a. Select "Record Name" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob, and say the name to be registered.

b. Press the talk switch and say the name to be registered.

A voice guidance instruction to confirm the input is heard.

STEP 5 Select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

A passkey is displayed and heard, and a voice guidance instruction for inputting the passkey into the portable player is heard.

STEP 6 Input the passkey into the portable player.

Refer to the manual that comes with the portable player for the operation of the portable player.

Guidance for registration completion is heard.

If the portable player has a Bluetooth® phone, the phone can be registered at the same time. A voice guidance instruction to register a Bluetooth® phone is heard.

STEP 7 Select "Yes" or "No" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob. (Bluetooth® phone →P. 487)

Menu list of the Bluetooth® audio system

Normal operation

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
"Setup"	"BT·A Setup"	"Pair Audio"	Registering a portable player
		"Connect"	Selecting a portable player to be used
		"Change Name"	Changing the registered name of a portable player
		"List Audios"	Listing the registered portable players
		"Set Passkey"	Changing the passkey
		"Delete Audio"	Deleting a registered portable player
	"System Setup"	"Guidance Vol"	Setting voice guidance volume
		"Device Name"	Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
		"Initialize"	Initializing the system

■ **When using a voice command**

For numbers, say a combination of single digits from zero to nine.

Say the command correctly and clearly.

■ **Situations that the system may not recognize your voice**

- When driving on rough roads
- When driving at high speeds
- When air is blowing out of the vents onto the microphone
- When the air conditioning fan emits a loud noise

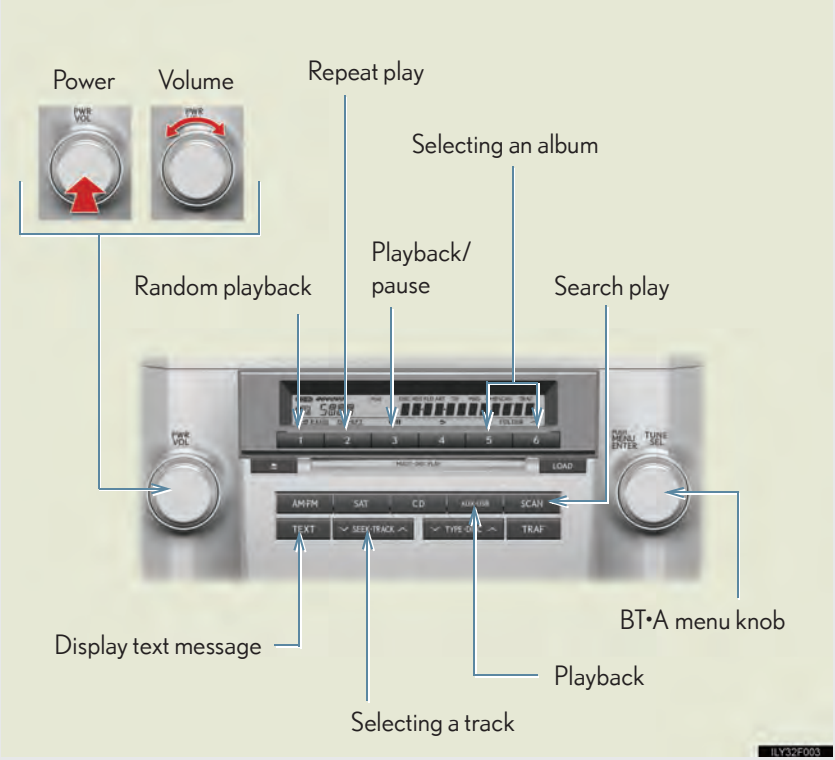
■ **Operations that cannot be performed while driving**

- Operating the system with the "TUNE/SEL" knob
- Registering a portable player to the system

■ **Changing the passkey**

→P. 482

Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player



Selecting an album

To select the desired album, press the 5 (∨) or 6 (∧) button.

Selecting tracks

Press "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button to select the desired track.

Playing and pausing tracks

To play or pause a track, press the 3 (►II) button.

Fast-forwarding and rewinding tracks

To fast-forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on the "SEEK•TRACK" button until you hear a beep.

Random playback

Press the 1 (RAND) button.

To cancel, press the 1 (RAND) button again.

Repeat play

Press the 2 (RPT) button.

To cancel, press the 2 (RPT) button again.

Scanning tracks

Press the “SCAN” button.

To cancel, press the “SCAN” button again.

Switching the display

Press the “TEXT” button.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → Album title → Track title → Artist name

Using the steering wheel audio switches

→P. 460

■ **Bluetooth® audio system functions**

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

■ **Display**

→P. 427

■ **Error messages**

“Memory Error”: This indicates a problem in the system.

Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player

Registering a portable player in the Bluetooth® audio system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered portable players:

■ Functions and operation procedures

Pattern A

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

- Registering a portable player
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Bluetooth Audio Setup (BT•A Setup)" →
  3. "Pair Audio Player (Pair Audio)"
- Selecting a portable player to be used
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Bluetooth Audio Setup (BT•A Setup)" →
  3. "Connect Audio Player (Connect)"
- Changing the registered name of a portable player
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Bluetooth Audio Setup (BT•A Setup)" →
  3. "Change Name"
- Listing the registered portable players
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Bluetooth Audio Setup (BT•A Setup)" →
  3. "List Audio Players (List Audios)"
- Changing the passkey
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Bluetooth Audio Setup (BT•A Setup)" →
  3. "Set Passkey"
- Deleting a registered portable player
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Bluetooth Audio Setup (BT•A Setup)" →
  3. "Delete Audio Player (Delete Audio)"

Pattern B

STEP 1 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob to select "BT•A MENU".

STEP 2 Press the talk switch or select "BT•A Setup" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 3 Select one of the following functions using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

- Registering a portable player
  "Pair Audio Player (Pair Audio)"
- Selecting a portable player to be used
  "Connect Audio Player (Connect)"
- Changing the registered name
  "Change Name"
- Listing the registered portable players
  "List Audio Players (List Audios)"
- Changing the passkey
  "Set Passkey"
- Deleting a registered portable player
  "Delete Audio Player (Delete Audio)"

Registering a portable player

Select "Pair Audio Player (Pair Audio)" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob, and perform the procedure for registering a portable player. (→P. 470)

Selecting a portable player to be used

STEP 1 Select "Connect Audio Player (Connect)" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the portable player to be used by either of the following methods, and select "Confirm" by using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the name of the desired portable player.

b. Press the talk switch and say "List Audio Players". When the name of the desired portable player is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the portable player to be used using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern A

STEP 3 Press the talk switch and say "From Car" or "From Audio player", and select "Confirm" by using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern B

STEP 3 Select "From Car" or "From Audio", using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

If "From Car" is selected, the portable player will be automatically connected whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Changing the registered name of a portable player

STEP 1 Select "Change Name" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the name of the portable player to be changed by either of the following methods, and select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the name of desired portable player.

b. Press the talk switch and say "List Audio Players". When the name of the desired portable player is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired portable player name to be changed using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 3 Press the talk switch or select "Record Name" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob, and say the new name.

STEP 4 Select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Listing the registered portable players

Select "List Audio Players (List Audios)" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob. The list of registered portable players will be read aloud.
When listing is complete, the system returns to "BT•A Setup".

Pressing the talk switch while the name of a portable player is being read aloud selects the portable player, and the following functions will become available:

- Selecting a portable player: "Connect Audio Player (Connect)"
- Changing a registered name: "Change Name"
- Deleting a portable player: "Delete Audio Player (Delete Audio)"

Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select “Set Passkey” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Press the talk switch, say a 4 to 8-digit number, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select a 4 to 8-digit number using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

The number should be input 1 digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press the “TUNE/SEL” knob again.

If the number to be registered has 8 digits, pressing of the knob is not necessary.

Deleting a registered portable player

STEP 1 Select "Delete Audio Player (Delete Audio)" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the portable player to be deleted by either of the following methods and select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the name of the desired portable player.

b. Press the talk switch and say "List Audio Players". When the name of the desired portable player is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired portable player to be deleted using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

If the portable player to be deleted is paired as a Bluetooth® phone, the registration of the cellular phone can be deleted at the same time. A voice guidance instruction to delete a cellular phone is heard.

STEP 3 Select "Yes" or "No" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob. (Bluetooth® phone →P. 487)

■ The number of portable players that can be registered

Up to 2 portable players can be registered in the system.

■ System setup items and operation procedures

Pattern A

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:
(→P. 507)

Pattern B

STEP 1 Press the "TUNE/SEL" knob to select "BT•A MENU".

STEP 2 Select "System Setup" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

- Setting voice guidance volume
  "Guidance Vol" (→P. 509)
- Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
  "Device Name" (→P. 509)
- Initializing the system
  "Initialize" (→P. 509)

Hands-free system for cellular phones

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your cellular phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® cellular phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the cellular phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system

Title	Page
Using the hands-free system	P. 489
Making a phone call	P. 497
Setting a cellular phone	P. 502
Security and system setup	P. 507
Using the phone book	P. 511

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a cellular phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the cellular phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the cellular phone is not connected
- If the cellular phone's battery is low
- If the cellular phone is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box
- If metal is covering or touching the phone

■ **Signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the cellular phone itself.

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - When a window is open
  - When the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - When the air conditioning is set to high

■ **When transferring ownership of the vehicle**

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 509)

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

Compatible with HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.5 and OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1.

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone. If your cellular phone supports OPP alone, you cannot use the Bluetooth® phone.

■ **Certification for the hands-free system**

FCC ID: AJDK018
IC ID: 775E-K018
MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure. This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and legs).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Caution while driving

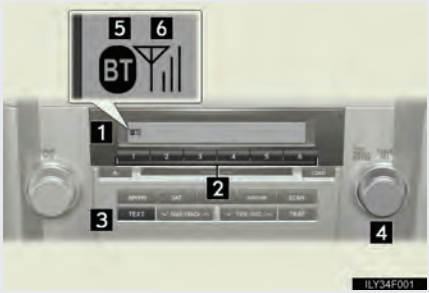
Do not use a cellular phone or connect the Bluetooth® phone.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent damage to cellular phones

Do not leave cellular phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the phone.

Audio unit



1 Display
A message, name, phone number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

2 Selects speed dials

3 Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

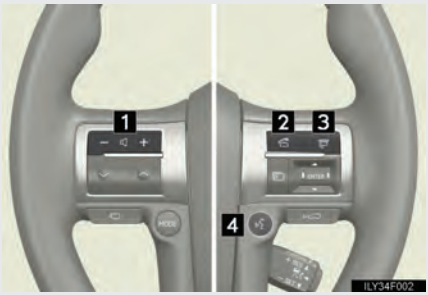
4 Selects items such as menu and number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item

5 Bluetooth® connection condition

If "BT" is not displayed, the hands-free phone system cannot be used.

6 Reception level

Steering wheel switches



1 Volume

The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using this button.

2 Off-hook switch

Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

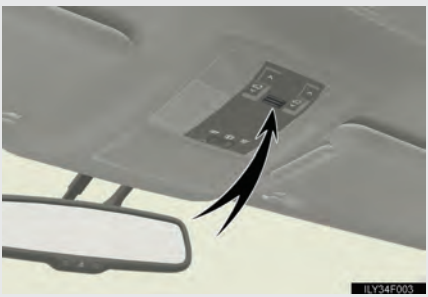
3 On-hook switch

Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

4 Talk switch

Turns the voice command system on (press)/turns the voice command system off (press and hold)

Microphone



Operating the system using voice commands

By following voice guidance instructions output from the speaker, voice commands enable to the operation of the hands-free phone system without the need to check the display or operate the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

■ Operation procedure when using voice commands

Press the talk switch and follow voice guidance instructions.

■ Auxiliary commands when using voice commands

The following auxiliary commands can be used when operating the system using a voice command:

"Cancel": Exits the hands-free phone system
"Repeat": Repeats the previous voice guidance instruction
"Go back": Returns to the previous procedure
"Help": Reads aloud the function summary if a help comment is registered for the selected function

Using the hands-free phone system for the first time

Before using the hands-free phone system, it is necessary to register a cellular phone in the system. The system will enter phone registration mode automatically when starting the system with no cellular phone registered. Follow the procedure below to register (pair) a cellular phone:

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch or the talk switch.

The introductory guidance and phone name registration instructions are heard.

STEP 2 Select “Pair Phone” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP 3 Register a phone name by either of the following methods:

a. Select “Record Name” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob, and say the name to be registered.

b. Press the talk switch and say the name to be registered.

A voice guidance instruction to confirm the input is heard.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

A passkey is displayed and heard, and a voice guidance instruction for inputting the passkey into the cellular phone is heard.

STEP 5 Input the passkey into the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the operation of the phone.

Guidance for registration completion is heard.

If the cellular phone has a Bluetooth® audio player, the audio player can be registered at the same time. A voice guidance instruction to register a Bluetooth® audio player is heard.

STEP 6 Select “Yes” or “No” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob. (Bluetooth® audio player →P. 465)

Menu list of the hands-free phone system

Normal operation

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
"Callback"	-	-	Dialing a number stored in the incoming call history memory
"Redial"	-	-	Dialing a number stored in the outgoing call history memory
"Phonebook"	"Add Entry"	-	Adding a new phone number
	"Change Name"	-	Changing the registered name in the phone book
	"Delete Entry"	-	Deleting the registered data
	"Del Spd Dial"	-	Deleting speed dials
	"List Names"	-	Listing the registered data
	"Speed Dial"	-	Setting speed dials

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
"Setup"	"Security"	"Set PIN"	Setting a PIN code
		"Phbk Lock"	Locking the phone book
		"Phbk Unlock"	Unlocking the phone book
	"Phone Setup"	"Pair Phone"	Registering the cellular phone to be used
		"Connect"	Selecting a cellular phone to be used
		"Change Name"	Changing a registered name of a cellular phone
		"List Phones"	Listing the registered cellular phones
		"Set Passkey"	Changing the passkey
		"Delete Phone"	Deleting a registered cellular phone
	"System Setup"	"Guidance Vol"	Setting voice guidance volume
		"Device Name"	Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
		"Initialize"	Initializing the system

Using a short cut key

First menu	Second menu	Operation detail
“Dial XXX (name)”	-	Dialing a name registered in the phone book
“Phone book add Entry”	-	Adding a new phone number
“Phone book Change name”	-	Changing a registered name in the phone book
“Phone book Delete Entry”	-	Deleting the registered data
“Phone book List names”	-	Listing the registered data
“Phone book Set Speed Dial”	-	Setting speed dials
“Phone book Delete Speed Dial”	-	Deleting speed dials
“Dial XXX (number)”	-	Dialing by inputting a number
“Phonebook”	“Phonebook Unlock”	Unlocking the phone book
	“Phonebook Lock”	Locking the phone book

■ **Automatic volume adjustment**

When vehicle speed reaches 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the volume automatically increases. The volume returns to the previous volume setting when vehicle speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h) or less.

■ **When using a voice command**

For numbers, say a combination of single digits from zero to nine, # (pound), * (star), and + (plus).

Say the command correctly and clearly.

■ **Situations that the system may not recognize your voice**

- When driving on rough roads
- When driving at high speeds
- When air is blowing out of the vents onto the microphone
- When the air conditioning fan emits a loud noise

■ **Operations that cannot be performed while driving**

- Operating the system with the "TUNE/SEL" knob
- Registering a cellular phone to the system

■ **Changing the passkey**

→P. 505

Making a phone call

■ Making a phone call
- Dialing by inputting a number
  "Dial by number"
- Dialing by inputting a name
  "Dial by name"
- Speed dialing
- Dialing a number stored in the outgoing history memory
  "Redial"
- Dialing a number stored in the incoming history memory
  "Call back"

■ Receiving a phone call
- Answering the phone
- Refusing the call

■ Transferring a call

■ Call waiting

■ Using the call history memory
- Dialing
- Storing data in the phone book
- Deleting

Dialing by inputting a number

STEP 1 Press the talk switch and say “Dial by number”.

STEP 2 Press the talk switch and say the phone number.

STEP 3 Dial by one of the following methods:

a. Press the off-hook switch.

b. Press the talk switch and say “Dial”.

c. Select “Dial” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Dialing by inputting a name

STEP 1 Press the talk switch and say “Dial by name”.

STEP 2 Select a registered name to be input by either of the following methods:

a. Press the talk switch and say a registered name.

b. Press the talk switch and say “List Names”. Press the talk switch when the desired name is read aloud.

STEP 3 Dial by one of the following methods:

a. Press the off-hook switch.

b. Press the talk switch and say “Dial”.

c. Select “Dial” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Speed dialing

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch.

STEP 2 Press the preset button in which the desired number is registered.

STEP 3 Press the off-hook switch.

When receiving a phone call

Answering the phone

Press the off-hook switch.

Refusing the call

Press the on-hook switch.

Transferring a call

A call can be transferred between the cellular phone and system while dialing, receiving a call, or during a call. Use one of the following methods:

a. Operate the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the operation of the phone.

b. Press the off-hook switch*1.

c. Press the talk switch and say "Call Transfer"*2.

*1: This operation can be performed only when transferring a call from the cellular phone to the system during a call.

*2: While the vehicle is in motion, calls cannot be transferred from the system to the cellular phone.

Call waiting

When a call is interrupted by an incoming call from a third party, the following options will become available:

- Answer the incoming call: Press the off-hook switch. (Press the off-hook switch again as necessary to switch back and forth between calls.)
- Refuse the incoming call: Press the on-hook switch.

Using the call history memory

Follow the procedure below to use a number stored in the call history memory:

STEP 1 Press the talk switch and say "Redial" (when using a number stored in the outgoing call history memory) or "Call back" (when using a number stored in the incoming call history memory).

STEP 2 Select the number by either of the following methods:

a. Say "Previous" or "Go back" until the desired number is displayed.

b. Select the desired number using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 3 The following operations can be performed:

Dialing: Press the off-hook switch or select "Dial" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Storing the number in the phone book: Select "Store" and then "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Deleting: Select "Delete" and then "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

■ **Call waiting**

- If your phone does not support HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.
- Call waiting operation may differ depending on your cellular phone and service provider.

■ **Call history**

Up to 5 numbers can be stored in each of the outgoing and incoming call history memories.

■ **When talking on the phone**

- Do not talk simultaneously with the other party.
- Keep the volume of the received voice down. Otherwise, voice echo will increase.

Registering a cellular phone in the hands-free phone system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered cellular phones:

Functions and operation procedures

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

- Registering a cellular phone
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Pair Phone"
- Selecting a cellular phone to be used
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Connect Phone (Connect)"
- Changing the registered name of a cellular phone
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Change Name"
- Listing the registered cellular phones
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "List Phones"
- Changing the passkey
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Set Passkey"
- Deleting a registered cellular phone
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Phone Setup" → 3. "Delete Phone"

Registering a cellular phone

Select “Pair Phone” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob, and perform the procedure for registering a cellular phone. (→P. 491)

Selecting a cellular phone to be used

STEP 1 Select “Connect Phone (Connect)” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the cellular phone to be used by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the name of the desired cellular phone.

b. Press the talk switch and say “List Phones”. When the name of the desired cellular phone is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the cellular phone to be used using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Changing the registered name of a cellular phone

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the name of the cellular phone to be changed by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the name of the desired cellular phone.

b. Press the talk switch and say “List Phones”. When the name of the desired cellular phone is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired cellular phone name to be changed using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP 3 Press the talk switch or select “Record Name” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob, and say the new name.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Listing the registered cellular phones

Select "List Phones" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.
The list of registered cellular phones will be read aloud.
When listing is complete, the system returns to "Phone Setup".

Pressing the talk switch while the name of a cellular phone is being read aloud selects the cellular phone, and the following functions will become available:

- Selecting a cellular phone: "Connect Phone (Connect)"
- Changing a registered name: "Change Name"
- Deleting a cellular phone: "Delete Phone"

Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select "Set Passkey" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Press the talk switch, say a 4 to 8-digit number, and select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select a 4 to 8-digit number using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

The number should be input 1 digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press the "TUNE/SEL" knob again.

If the number to be registered has 8 digits, pressing of the knob is not necessary.

Deleting a registered cellular phone

STEP 1 Select "Delete Phone" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the cellular phone to be deleted by either of the following methods and select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the name of the desired cellular phone.

b. Press the talk switch and say "List Phones". When the name of the desired cellular phone is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired cellular phone to be deleted using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

If the cellular phone to be deleted is paired as a Bluetooth® audio player, the registration of the audio player can be deleted at the same time. A voice guidance instruction to delete a Bluetooth® audio player is heard.

STEP 3 Select "Yes" or "No" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob. (Bluetooth® audio player →P. 465)

■ **The number of cellular phones that can be registered**

Up to 6 cellular phones can be registered in the system.

■ **Security setting items and operation procedures**

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

- Setting or changing the PIN (Personal Identification Number)
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Security" → 3. "Set PIN"
- Locking the phone book
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Security" → 3. "Phonebook Lock (Phbk Lock)"
- Unlocking the phone book
  1. "Setup" → 2. "Security" →
  3. "Phonebook Unlock (Phbk Unlock)"

■ **System setup items and operation procedures**

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below using the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

- Setting voice guidance volume
  1. "Setup" → 2. "System Setup" → 3. "Guidance Vol"
- Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
  1. "Setup" → 2. "System Setup" → 3. "Device Name"
- Initializing the system
  1. "Setup" → 2. "System Setup" → 3. "Initialize"

Setting or changing the PIN

Setting a PIN

STEP 1 Select "Set PIN" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Enter a PIN using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

When using the "TUNE/SEL" knob, input the code 1 digit at a time.

Changing the PIN

STEP 1 Select "Set PIN" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Enter the registered PIN using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 3 Enter a new PIN using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

When using the "TUNE/SEL" knob, input the code 1 digit at a time.

Locking or unlocking the phone book

STEP 1 Select "Phonebook Lock (Phbk Lock)" or "Phonebook Unlock (Phbk Unlock)" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Input the PIN by either of the following methods and select "Confirm" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the registered PIN.

b. Input a new PIN using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

Setting voice guidance volume

STEP 1 Select "Guidance Vol" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Change the voice guidance volume.

To decrease the volume: Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob counterclockwise.

To increase the volume: Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob clockwise.

Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name

STEP 1 Select "Device Name" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Turn the "TUNE/SEL" knob to display the Bluetooth® device address and name.

STEP 3 Select "Go Back" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob to return to "System Setup".

Initializing the system

STEP 1 Select "Initialize" and then "Confirm" using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Select "Confirm" again using the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

■ **Initialization**

● The following data in the system can be initialized:

- Phone book
- Outgoing and incoming call history
- Speed dials
- Registered cellular phone data
- Security code
- Registered Bluetooth® enabled portable player data
- Passkey for the cellular phones
- Passkey for the Bluetooth® audio players
- Guidance volume
- Receiver volume
- Ring tone volume

● Once the initialization has been completed, the data cannot be restored to its original state.

■ **When the phone book is locked**

The following functions cannot be used:

● Dialing by inputting a name

● Speed dialing

● Dialing a number stored in the call history memory

● Using the phone book

Using the phone book

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob:

- Adding a new phone number
  1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Add Entry"
- Changing the registered name in the phone book
  1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Change Name"
- Listing the registered data
  1. "Phonebook" → 2. "List Names"
- Setting speed dials
  1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)"
- Deleting the registered data
  1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Delete Entry"
- Deleting speed dials
  1. "Phonebook" → 2. "Delete Speed Dial (Del Spd Dial)"

Adding a new phone number

The following methods can be used to add a new phone number:

- Inputting a phone number using a voice command
- Transferring data from the cellular phone
- Inputting a phone number using the "TUNE/SEL" knob
- Selecting a phone number from outgoing or incoming call history

Adding procedure

STEP 1 Select "Add Entry" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP 2 Use one of the following methods to input a telephone number:

Inputting a telephone number using a voice command:

STEP2-1 Select "By Voice" using a voice command or the "TUNE/SEL" knob.

STEP2-2 Press the talk switch, say the desired number, and select "Confirm" using a voice command.

Transferring data from the cellular phone:

STEP2-1 Select “By Phone” and then “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP2-2 Transfer the data from the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the details of transferring data.

STEP2-3 Select the data to be registered by either of the following methods:

a. Say “Previous” or “Next” until the desired data is displayed, and select “Confirm” using a voice command.

b. Select the desired data using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Inputting a phone number using the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

STEP2-1 Select “Manual Input” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP2-2 Input a phone number using the “TUNE/SEL” knob, and press the “TUNE/SEL” knob again.

Input the phone number 1 digit at a time.

Selecting a phone number from outgoing or incoming call history:

STEP2-1 Select “Call History” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP2-2 Select “Outgoing” or “Incoming” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP2-3 Select the data to be registered by either of the following methods:

a. Say “Previous” or “Go back” until the desired data is displayed, and select “Confirm” using a voice command.

b. Select the desired data using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP 3 Select the name to be registered by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

a. Press the talk switch and say the desired name.

b. Select “Record Name” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob, and say the desired name.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

In STEP 4, selecting “Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)” instead of “Confirm” registers the newly added phone number as a speed dial.

Changing the registered name in the phone book

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the name to be changed by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

a. Press the talk switch, say the desired name.

b. Press the talk switch, and say “List Names”. When the desired name is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired name to be changed using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP 3 Press the talk switch or select “Record Name” using the “TUNE/SEL” knob, and say the new name.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Listing the registered data

Select “List Names” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob. The list of the registered data will be read aloud.
When listing is complete, the system returns to the “Phonebook”.

Pressing the talk switch while the desired data is being read aloud selects the data, and the following function will become available:

- Dialing: “Dial”
- Changing a registered name: “Change Name”
- Deleting an entry: “Delete Entry”
- Setting a speed dial: “Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)”

Setting speed dials

STEP 1 Select “Set Speed Dial (Speed Dial)” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the data to be registered as a speed dial by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

a. Press the talk switch, say the desired name.

b. Press the talk switch, and say “List Names”. When the desired name is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired data using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP 3 Select the desired preset button, and register the data into speed dial by either of the following methods:

a. Press the desired preset button, and select “Confirm” by using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

b. Press and hold the desired preset button.

Deleting the registered data

STEP 1 Select “Delete Entry” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Pattern A

STEP 2 Select the data to be deleted by either of the following methods, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob:

a. Press the talk switch, and say the name of the desired phone number.

b. Press the talk switch, say “List Names”. When the name of the desired phone number is read aloud, press the talk switch.

Pattern B

STEP 2 Select the desired data to be deleted using the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Deleting speed dials

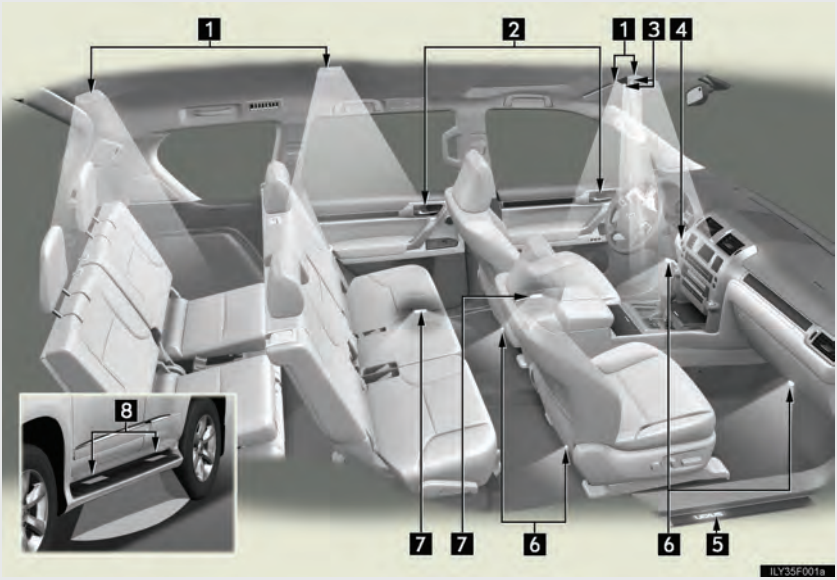
STEP 1 Select “Delete Speed Dial (Del Spd Dial)” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

STEP 2 Press the preset button to which the desired speed dial is registered, and select “Confirm” using a voice command or the “TUNE/SEL” knob.

Limitation of number of digits

A phone number that exceeds 24 digits cannot be registered.

Interior lights list



1 Personal/interior lights (→P. 521)
2 Inside door handle lights
3 Shift lever light (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)
4 "ENGINE START STOP" switch light
5 Scuff lights (if equipped)
6 Footwell lights
7 Door courtesy lights
8 Running board lights

Personal/interior light main switch



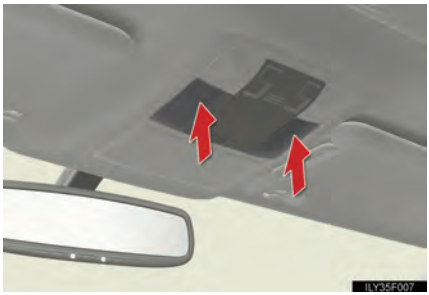
1 OFF
The personal/Interior lights and interior light can be individually turned on or off.

2 Door position
The personal/interior lights come on when a door is opened. They turn off when the doors are closed.

3 On
The personal/interior lights cannot be individually turned off.

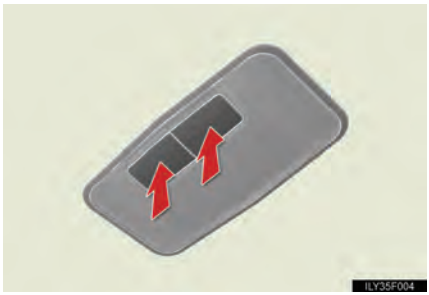
Personal/interior lights

Front



Turns the lights on/off

Rear



Turns the lights on/off

■ **Illuminated entry system**

The lights automatically turn on/off according to "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

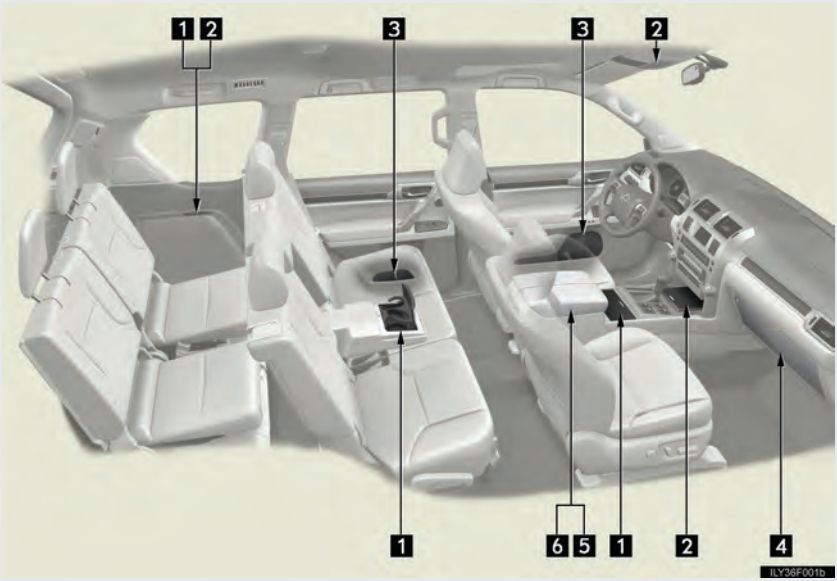
If the following lights remain on when the door is not fully closed and the personal/interior light main switch is in the door position, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes:

- Personal/interior light
- Inside door handle lights
- Footwell lights
- Running board lights

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. adjust the time elapsed before the interior lights automatically turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 782)

List of storage features



1 Cup holders
2 Auxiliary boxes
3 Bottle holders/door pockets
4 Glove box
5 Console box (if equipped)
6 Coin holder (if equipped)

⚠ CAUTION

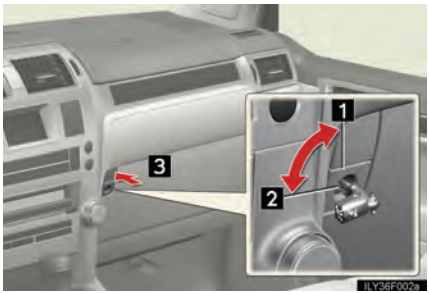
■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box

The glove box can be opened by pulling the lever and can be locked and unlocked by using the mechanical key.



1 Lock
2 Unlock
3 Open

Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

CAUTION

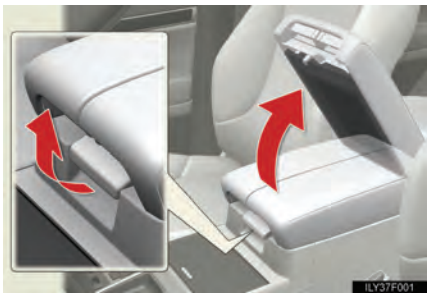
Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

Console box (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with either a console box or cool box.
For vehicles with the cool box, refer to P. 535.

Console box

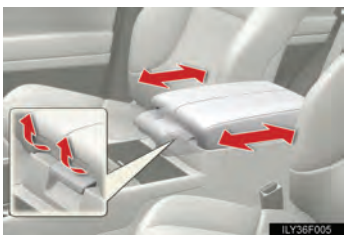


Lift the lid while pulling up the lower lever to release the lock.

■ Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

■ When using the console box lid as an armrest



Slide the console box lid forward or backward as needed. Slide the lid while pulling up the upper lever to release the lock.

Tray in the console box



The tray slides forward/backward.

Removing the tray



Pull up the tray.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open console box or the items stored inside.

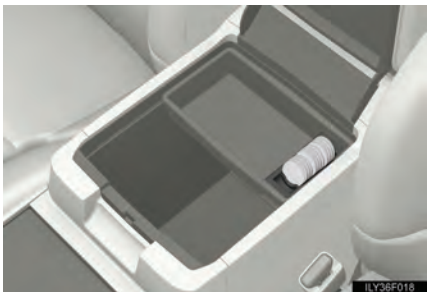
NOTICE

Tray

Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

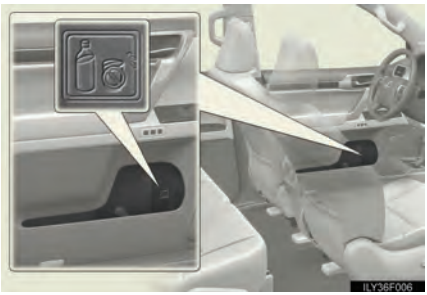
Coin holder (if equipped)

The coin holder is located in the console box.



Bottle holders/door pockets

Front



Rear



■ **When using the holder as a bottle holder**

- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

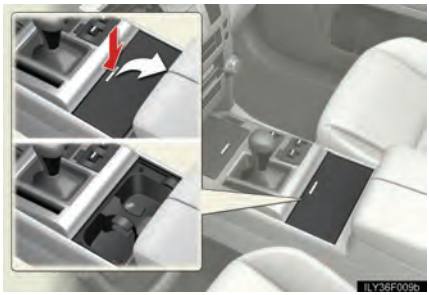
⚠ NOTICE

■ **Items that should not be stowed in the bottle holders**

Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders, or glasses and paper cups containing liquid. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Cup holders

For front seats



Press down and release the cup holder lid.

You can remove the holder inside.

For second seats (vehicles without third seats)



Pull the armrest down.

For second seats (vehicles with third seats)



Pull the armrest down and press in and release the button.

For third seats (except for left side seat of the vehicles with a DVD changer)



■ **Cup holder lights (front seats)**

- The cup holder lights turn on when the tail lights are on.
- The brightness of the cup holder lights change in conjunction with the instrument cluster light. (→P. 196)

■ **Cup holder insert**

For front seats



Cup holder insert may be removed for cleaning.

Removing the adapter

For second seats (vehicles without third seats)



Pull up the adapter.

CAUTION

Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups, mugs or beverage cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident, cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open cup holders or the items stored inside.

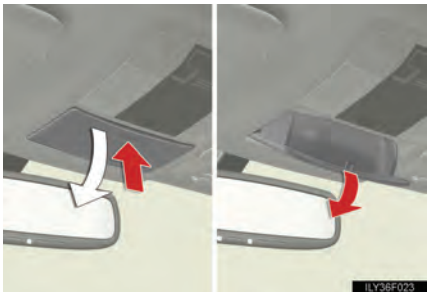
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear cup holders (for second seats [vehicles with third seat])

Stow the cup holders before stowing the armrest.

Auxiliary boxes

Type A



Press in the button and then pull down the lid. The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

Type B



Slide the auxiliary box lid.

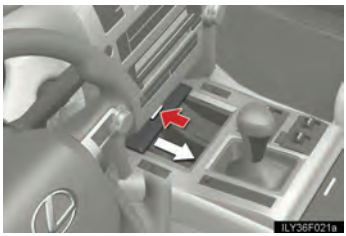
Type C (for third left side seat of the vehicles with a DVD changer)



■ **Auxiliary box light (type B)**

- The auxiliary box light turns on when the tail lights are on.
- The brightness of the auxiliary box light changes in conjunction with the instrument cluster light. (→P. 196)

■ **Closing the auxiliary box lid**



Slide the auxiliary box lid forward.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

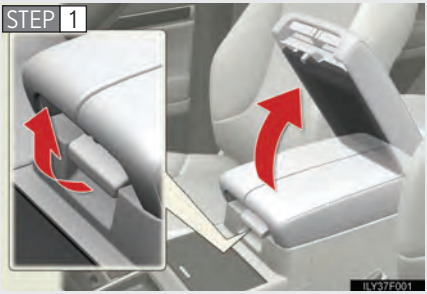
- Keep the auxiliary boxes closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open auxiliary box or the items stored inside.
- Do not place cups, aluminum cans or bottles in the box. They may be thrown out of the box in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident, resulting in injury. (type B and C)

■ **Items unsuitable for storing (type A)**

- Do not store items heavier than 0.4 lb. (0.2 kg).
  Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.
- Do not put large items in the overhead console.
  The overhead console may not be able to be shut from the conversation mirror state.

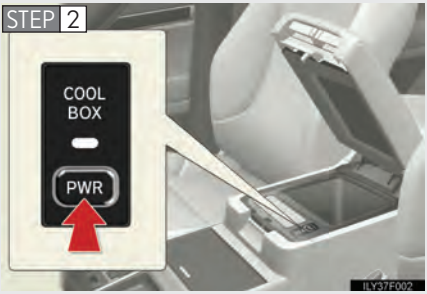
Cool box*

STEP 1



Lift the lid while pulling up the lower lever to release the lock.

STEP 2



Turns the cool box on/off

When on, the indicator light comes on.

■ **The cool box can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the cool box is turned on**

Turning cool box on also turns on front air conditioning system.

*: If equipped

■ **Items unsuitable for the cool box**

- Drinks in unsealed containers
- Fragile items, perishables or anything with strong odor
- Owner's manual, electronic devices, CDs, etc.

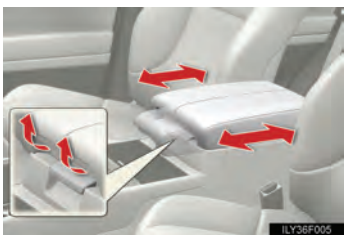
■ **When the indicator light flashes**

The cool box is not operated when any of the following conditions occurs.

- When the air conditioning system is off
  Turn the air conditioning system on also turns on the cool box.
- When outside air temperature is about 32 °F (0 °C) or below.
- When the "A/C ON" in the multi-information display (accessory meter) (→P. 392) also flashes
  Press the "A/C" button to turn off the cooling and dehumidification function and turn it on again.

If the indicator light continues to flash, there may be a malfunction in the system. Turn the air conditioning system off and have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When using the cool box lid as an armrest**



Slide the cool box lid forward or backward as needed. Slide the lid while pulling up the upper lever to release the lock.

CAUTION

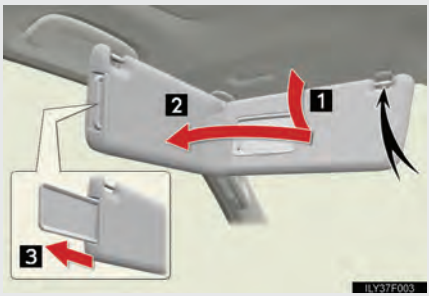
Caution while driving

Keep the cool box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open cool box or the items stored inside.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the cool box on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.



1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3 To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.



Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Vehicles with a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Vehicles without a navigation system



1 Adjusts the hours
2 Adjusts the minutes

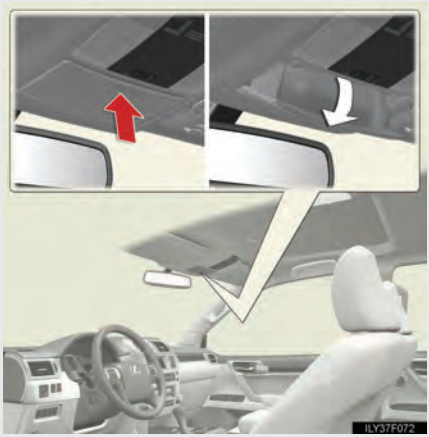
■ **The clock is displayed when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The clock data will be reset.

The conversation mirror can provide the driver and the front passenger with a view of the rear seat area without the need to turn around.



Press in the button.

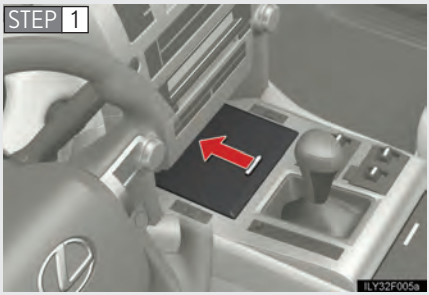
■ **To use the overhead console from the conversation mirror state**

Pull down the lid. (→P. 533)

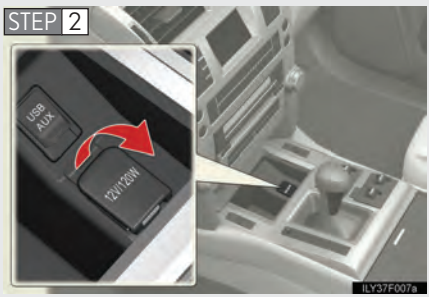
Power outlet (12 V DC)

The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.

Center cluster



Slide the auxiliary box lid.



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent blown fuse**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Power outlet (120 V AC)

The power outlet can be used for 120 V AC accessories that run on less than 100 W.

Luggage compartment (vehicles without third seats)



Luggage compartment (vehicles with third seats)



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **The protection circuit may be activated to cut the power supply if any of the following conditions apply:**

- Use of electrical appliances exceeding 100 W is attempted.
  A sound may be heard when the protection circuit is activated. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.
- The total power usage by all electrical features (headlights, air conditioning, etc.) has exceeded the total vehicle maximum for an extended period of time.

■ **If the protection circuit is activated and the power supply is cut, conduct the following procedure:**

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in a safe place, and then securely apply the parking brake.

STEP 2 Make sure that the power consumption of the electric appliance is within the maximum capacity of the power outlet and the appliance is not broken.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode again.

When the cabin temperature is high, open the windows to cool the temperature down. Once it reaches the normal temperature, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode again.

If the power supply does not resume even after the above procedure has been performed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a power outlet

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury.

- Use of the power outlet when it is wet with water or snow may result in electrical shocks and is extremely dangerous. The power outlet must be thoroughly dried before use.
- Do not allow children to use or play with the power outlet.
- Be careful not to get any part of your body caught in the power outlet lid.
- When using electrical appliances, strictly follow any cautions and notices written on their labels and in the manufacturers' instruction manuals.
- Do not modify, disassemble or repair the power outlet or its inverter in any way. Doing so may result in unexpected malfunctions or accidents, which could cause serious damage or injuries. Contact your Lexus dealer for any necessary repairs.

■ To prevent injuries and accidents, secure all electric appliances before use and do not use any appliances that may do any of the following:

- Distract the driver while driving, or hamper safe driving.
- Result in a fire or burn injuries due to the appliance rolling, falling or overheating while driving.
- Emit steam while the windows of the cabin are closed.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent unexpected accidents, such as electric shocks, do not perform any of the following actions:**

- Using the power outlet for electric heaters while sleeping.
- Contaminating the power outlet with liquid substances or mud.
- Handling electrical appliance plugs at the power outlet with wet hands or feet.
- Inserting foreign objects into the power outlet.
- Using malfunctioning electric appliances.
- Inserting inappropriate or badly fitting plugs into the power outlet.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet and the plug**

- Close the power outlet lid when not in use.
- Do not allow foreign objects or liquids to enter the power outlet, as this may cause a short circuit.
- Do not use plug adaptors to connect too many plugs to the power outlet.
- After removing a plug, gently close the power outlet lid.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

Do not use a 120 V AC appliance that requires more than 100 W.
If a 120 V AC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

NOTICE

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (120 V AC)**

The following 120 V AC appliances may not operate even if their power consumption is under 100 W.

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data.
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Turn off all the vehicle's electronic equipment and accessories, such as the headlights and air conditioning, when electrical appliances that consume in excess of 100 W are used continuously for long periods of time.

■ **To prevent any damage caused by heat**

- Do not use any electrical appliances that give off intense heat, such as toasters, in any locations including the internal or external trim, seats and deck.
- Do not use any electrical appliances that are easily affected by vibration or heat inside the vehicle. Vibration while driving, or the heat of the sun while parking, may result in damage to those electrical appliances.

■ **If any electrical appliances are to be used while driving**

Securely fasten both the appliances and their cables to prevent them from falling or getting caught in any of the power train components.

■ **If the power outlet is loose when an electrical appliance plug is connected**

Replace the outlet. Contact your Lexus dealer for any necessary replacements.

■ **If the power outlet gets dirty**

Turn the main switch off and use a soft, clean cloth to wipe it gently. Do not use any cleansing materials, such as organic solvents, wax, or compound cleaners, as these may damage the power outlet or cause it to malfunction.

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel heats the leather portion of the steering wheel.



Turns the heater on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

■ **The heated steering wheel can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Timer**

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

■ **If the indicator light flashes**

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the button again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*: If equipped

⚠ CAUTION

Burns

Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

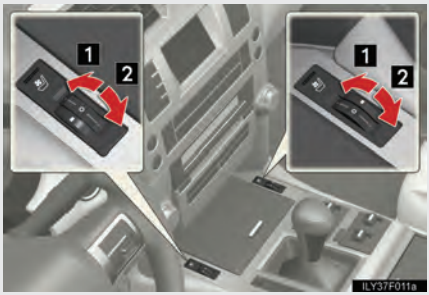
⚠ NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Turn the heater off when the engine is not running.

The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.

Front seat heaters/ventilators



1 Turns the seat heater on

The indicator light comes on. The higher the number of dots, the warmer the seat becomes.

2 Blows air from the seat

The indicator light comes on. The higher the number of dots, the stronger the airflow becomes.

■ Outer second seat heaters (if equipped)



1 For left second seat

2 For right second seat

3 High heating temperature

4 Low heating temperature

To turn on the seat heater, press "HI" or "LO".
The indicator light on "HI" or "LO" switch indicates that the seat heater is on.

5 Off

To turn off, press "OFF".

■ The seat heaters/ventilators can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ When not in use

Turn the dial until the indicator light turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
  Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use the seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cause minor burns or overheating.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Turn the seat heaters and ventilators off when the engine is not running.

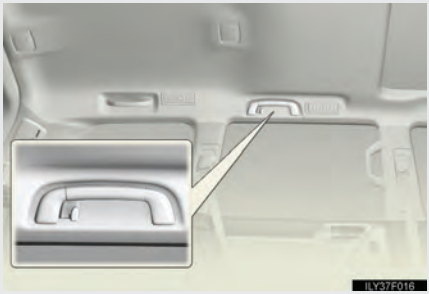


Fold down the armrest for use.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

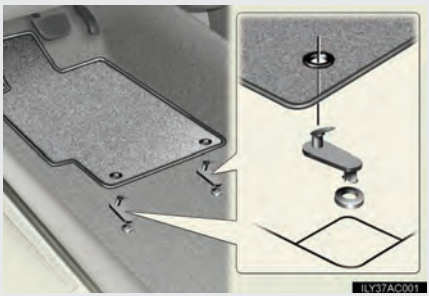


⚠ CAUTION

■ Items that cannot be hung on the coat hook

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.



Fix the floor mat in place using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) and the fixing procedure of the floor mat for your vehicle may differ from those shown in the illustration. For details, refer to the floor mat retention clip installation instructions supplied with the clips.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

CAUTION

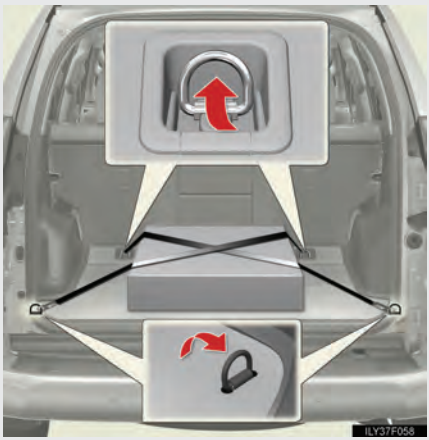
■ Before driving



- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

Cargo hooks

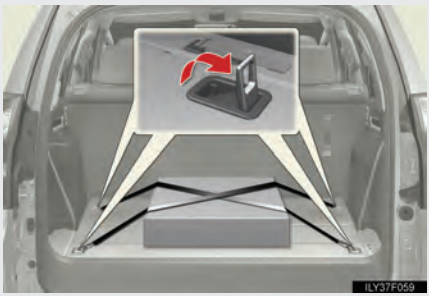
Vehicles without third seats



Raise the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

Vehicles with third seats



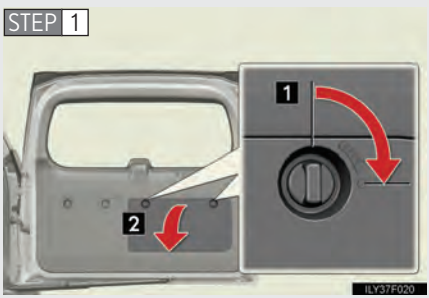
Raise the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

When using the deck hooks, the third seat must be fold down. (→P. 72)

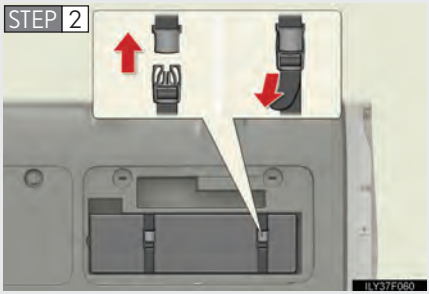
Warning reflector holder

STEP 1



1 Turn the knob clockwise.

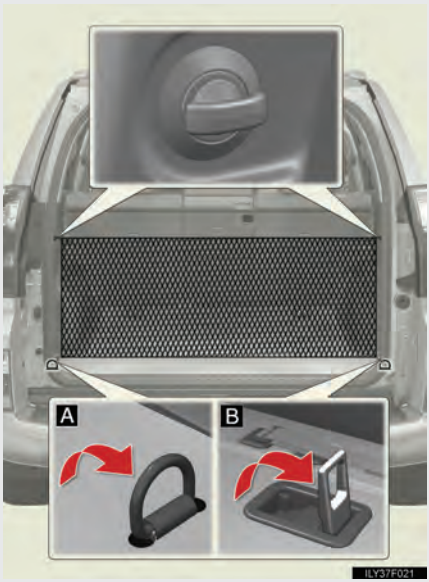
2 Open the lid.



Secure the warning reflector.

The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

Cargo net hooks



A Vehicles without third seats

B Vehicles with third seats

To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks.

The cargo net itself is not included as an original equipment.

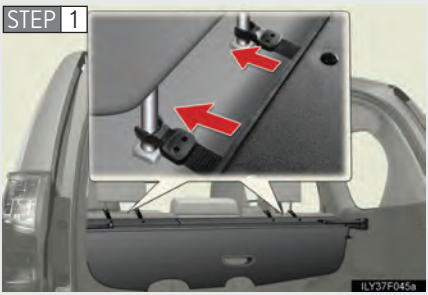
■ Auxiliary box (if equipped)



Remove the cover.

■ Luggage cover (if equipped)

Vehicles without third seats



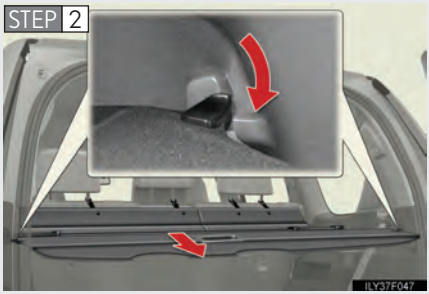
Attach the hooks to the head restraints.

Vehicles with third seats



Attach the hooks to the head restraints.

When using the luggage cover, the third seats must be fold down. (→P. 72)



Pull out the luggage cover and hook it on the anchors.

Removing the luggage cover

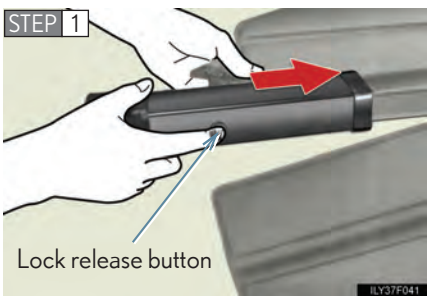
The luggage cover can be removed by following the procedure below.



Retract the cover and release both ends, then lift it out.

Vehicles without third seats: After removing the luggage cover, place it somewhere other than the passenger compartment.

Stowing the luggage cover (vehicle with third seat)

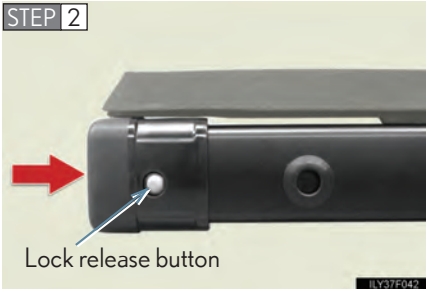


Push the case while pressing the lock release button.

Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system: Shorten one side only.

Vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system: Shorten both sides.

STEP 2



Push the case until it locks.

Check that the lock release button can be seen.

Vehicles without a rear automatic air conditioning system: Shorten one side only.

Vehicles with a rear automatic air conditioning system: Shorten both sides.

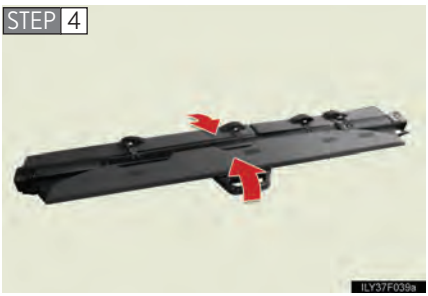
STEP 3



Secure the luggage cover with luggage cover restraining bands.

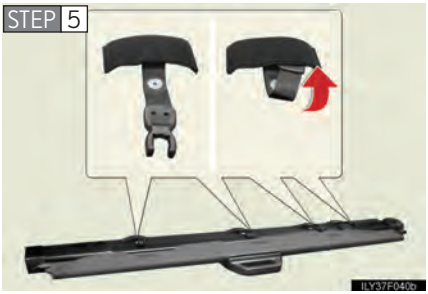
Check that luggage cover and luggage cover restraining bands are secured.

STEP 4



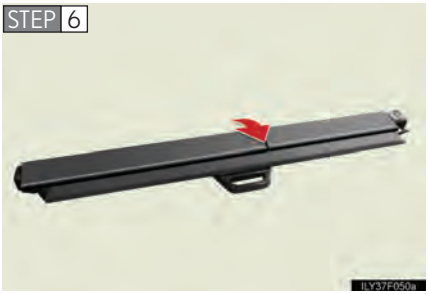
Fold over the cover and the sub cover.

STEP 5



Stow the hooks.

STEP 6



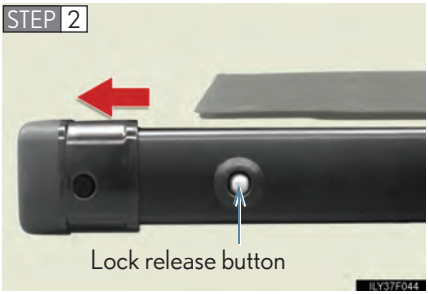
Fold over the sub cover.

Extending the case

STEP 1



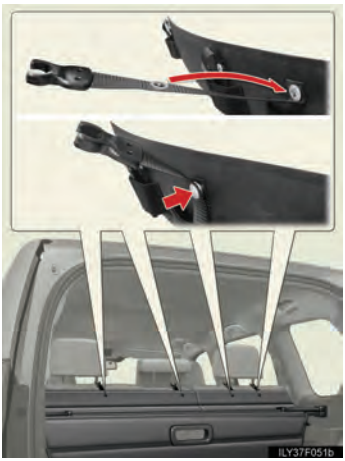
Push the lock release button.



Pull the case until it locks.

Check that the lock release button can be seen.

Adjusting the sub cover (vehicles with third seats)



Fasten the button when the second seats are in the rear-most position.

Unfasten the buttons before sliding the second seats forward.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions.

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the auxiliary box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open auxiliary box or the items stored inside.
- Keep the both sides of the luggage cover case locked. Otherwise, the luggage cover may fly out in case of the sudden braking, sudden serving or an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. (vehicles without third seats)
- When stowing the luggage cover in the luggage compartment, use the luggage cover restraining bands to secure the left and right sides of the luggage cover. Otherwise, the luggage cover may fly out in case of the sudden braking, sudden serving or an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. (vehicles without third seats)

■ Caution for the luggage cover

Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the luggage cover (vehicles without third seats)

- When stowing the luggage cover, do not put luggage on the luggage cover.



- Do not insert coins etc. into the area shown in the illustration.
- Do not use the luggage cover restraining bands for anything other than securing the luggage cover.

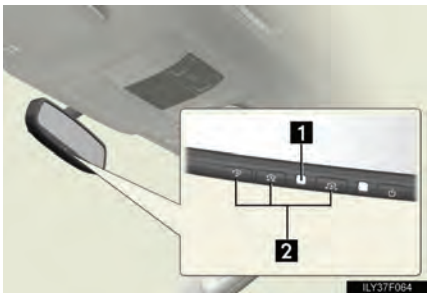
Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

Programming HomeLink® (for U.S. owners)

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



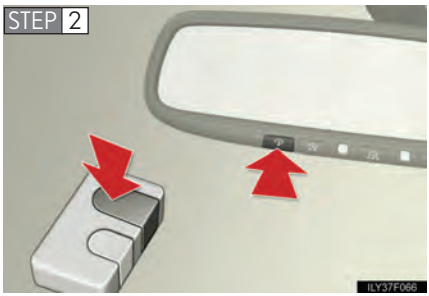
1 Indicator light
2 Buttons

■ Programming HomeLink®



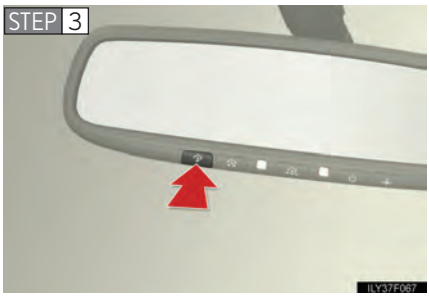
Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 in. (25 mm) from the HomeLink® buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.



Press and hold one of the HomeLink® buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

If the HomeLink® indicator light comes on but does not flash, or flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink® button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions. (→P. 572)



STEP 3 Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink® button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your garage transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming a rolling code system (for U.S. owners)**

If your device is rolling code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming HomeLink®" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the learn button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the learn button.

STEP 2 Press the learn button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

STEP 3 Press and release the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® signal and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming an entry gate (for U.S. owners)/Programming a device in the Canadian market**

STEP 1 Place the remote control transmitter 1 in. (25 mm) away from the HomeLink® buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the remote control transmitter for 2 seconds each until step 4 is completed.

STEP 4 When the HomeLink® indicator light starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming other devices**

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ **Reprogramming a button**

The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions.

Operating HomeLink®

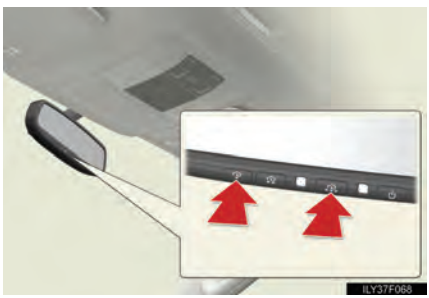
Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should come on.

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Reprogramming a HomeLink® button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink® indicator light will start flashing slowly. Keep pressing the HomeLink® button and then follow the "Programming HomeLink® (for U.S. owners)" instructions. (→P. 567)

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

■ **Before programming**

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

■ **Certification for the garage door opener**

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.
FCC ID: NZLWZLHL4

FCC ID: NZLOBIHL4

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada
NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

■ **When support is necessary**

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door or other devices may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

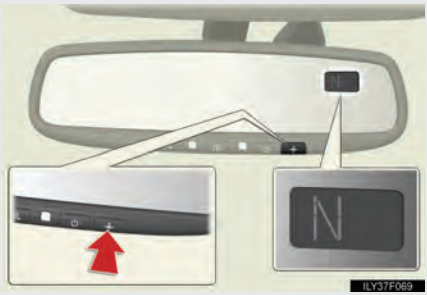
■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

Compass*

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

Operation



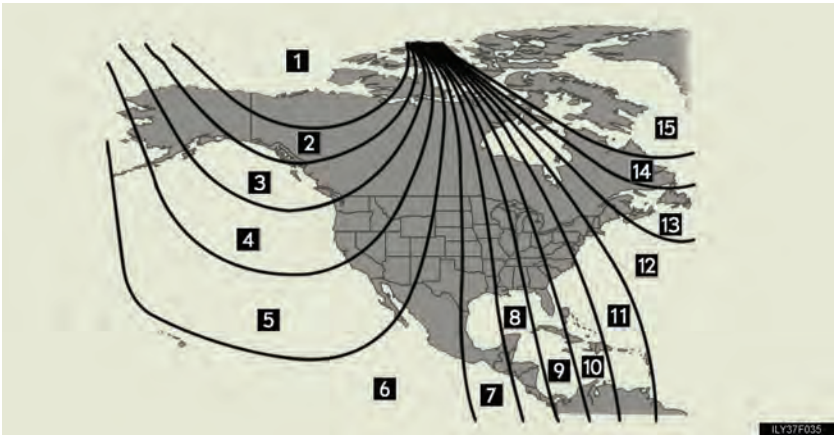
To turn the compass on or off, push the switch.

Displays and directions

Display	Direction
“N”	North
“NE”	Northeast
“E”	East
“SE”	Southeast
“S”	South
“SW”	Southwest
“W”	West
“NW”	Northwest

*: If equipped

Calibrating the compass

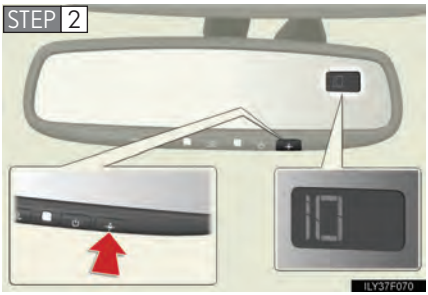


The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over one of the map boundaries shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.
To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to "Deviation calibration".

Deviation calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a place where it is safe to drive in a circle.



Press the switch until a number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

STEP 3 Press the switch and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.

If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is complete.

Circling calibration



When "C" appears on the display, drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

■ **Conditions unfavorable to correct operation**

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
  (There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving the vehicle**

Do not adjust the display. Adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

■ **When doing the circling calibration**

Secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the vicinity. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

NOTICE

■ To avoid the compass malfunctions

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause the compass sensor to malfunction.

■ To ensure normal operation of the compass

- Do not perform a circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

System components



1 Microphone
2 LED light indicators
3 "SOS" button

*: If equipped

■ **Services**

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

- Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 583)

  *: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2
- Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 584)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 584)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 584)

■ **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

■ **Safety Connect Services Information**

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance and Stolen Vehicle Location will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States (except Hawaii) and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ **Languages**

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ **When contacting the response center**

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.
The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.
Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.

Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

■ **Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect**

FCC ID: O9EGTM1
FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Maintenance and care 4

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 588

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 593

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 596

General maintenance 598

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 602

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 603

Hood 608

Engine compartment 609

Tires 628

Tire inflation pressure 635

Wheels 639

Air conditioning filter 642

Electronic key battery 644

Checking and replacing fuses 647

Headlight aim (vehicles with low beam halogen bulbs) 660

Light bulbs 662

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ **Automatic car washes**

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ **High pressure car washes**

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows and the air suspension unit.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ **Touch-up paint (if equipped)**

Touch-up paint may be used to cover small chips or scratches.

Apply the paint soon after the damage occurs or corrosion may set in. To apply the touch-up paint so it is hardly noticeable, the trick is to apply it only to the bare spots. Apply only the smallest amount possible and do not paint the surface around the scratch or chip.

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wiper)



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms**

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ **When using an automatic car wash**

Set the wiper switch to the off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5 % neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. The excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

⚠ CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 122)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends performing the following maintenance:

General maintenance

General maintenance should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Service Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures by yourself.
Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, refer to the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Service Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ **Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operation of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ **Handling of the battery**

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 623)

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Warranty and Service Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	Check the indicator and connections. (→P. 623)
Brake fluid	Is the brake fluid at the correct level? (→P. 619)
Engine coolant	Is the engine coolant at the correct level? (→P. 616)
Engine oil	Is the engine oil at the correct level? (→P. 611)
Exhaust system	There should not be any fumes or strange sounds.
Power steering fluid	Is the power steering fluid at the correct level? (→P. 621)
Radiator/condenser	The radiator and condenser should be free from foreign objects. (→P. 618)
Washer fluid	Is there sufficient washer fluid? (→P. 627)

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• The accelerator pedal should move smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching).
Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism	• When parked on a slope and the shift lever is in P, is the vehicle securely stopped?
Brake pedal	• Does the brake pedal move smoothly? • Does the brake pedal have appropriate clearance from the floor? • Does the brake pedal have the correct amount of free play?
Brakes	• The vehicle should not pull to one side when the brakes are applied. • The brakes should work effectively. • The brake pedal should not feel spongy. • The brake pedal should not get too close to the floor when the brakes are applied.

Items	Check points
Head restraints	• Do the head restraints move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Do the indicators and buzzers function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on?
Parking brake	• Does the parking brake lever or pedal move smoothly? • When parked on a slope and the parking brake is on, is the vehicle securely stopped?
Seat belts	• Do the seat belts operate smoothly? • The seat belts should not be damaged.
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	• Does the steering wheel rotate smoothly? • Does the steering wheel have the correct amount of free play? • There should not be any strange sounds coming from the steering wheel.

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors	• Do the doors operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• Does the engine hood lock system work properly?
Fluid leaks	• There should not be any signs of fluid leakage after the vehicle has been parked.
Tire	• Is the tire inflation pressure correct? • The tires should not be damaged or excessively worn. • Have the tires been rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • The wheel nuts should not be loose.

CAUTION

If the engine is running

Turn off the engine and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test in the following situations:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

  Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

  The malfunction indicator lamp comes on a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

When the malfunction indicator lamp still remains on after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 623)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 619)	• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)

Items	Parts and tools
Engine coolant level (→P. 616)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology For the U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50 % coolant and 50 % deionized water. For Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 55 % coolant and 45 % deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 611)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)

Items	Parts and tools
Fuses (→P. 647)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Headlight aim (→P. 660)	• Phillips-head screwdriver
Light bulbs (→P. 662)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Power steering fluid level (→P. 621)	• Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III • Rag or paper towel • Clean funnel
Radiator and condenser (→P. 618)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 635)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 627)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions:

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille:

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 618)

■ Safety glasses

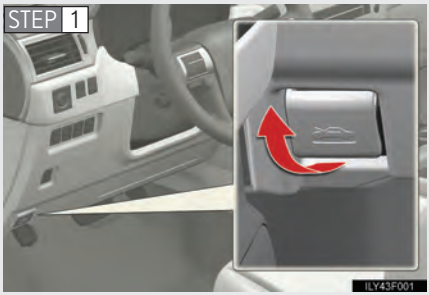
Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

If you remove the air cleaner filter

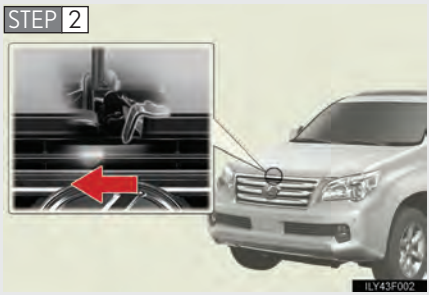
Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.



Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



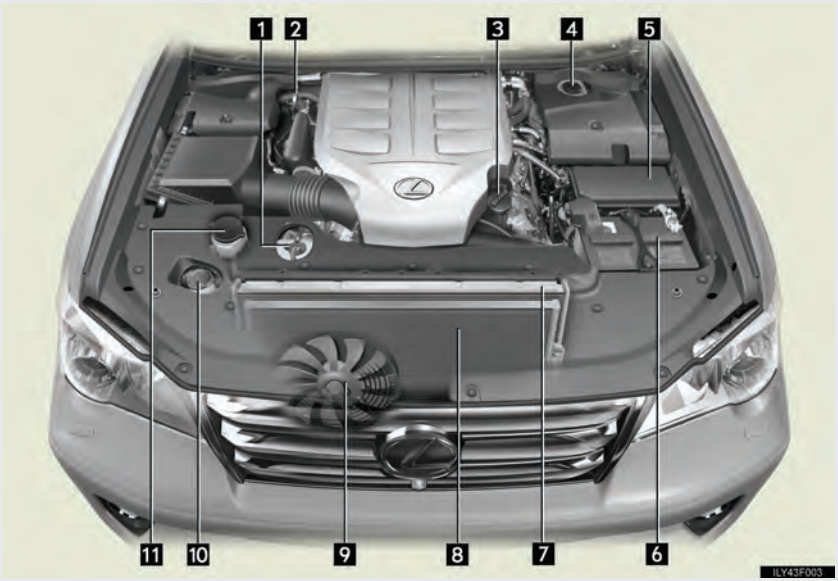
Move the auxiliary catch lever to side direction and lift the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

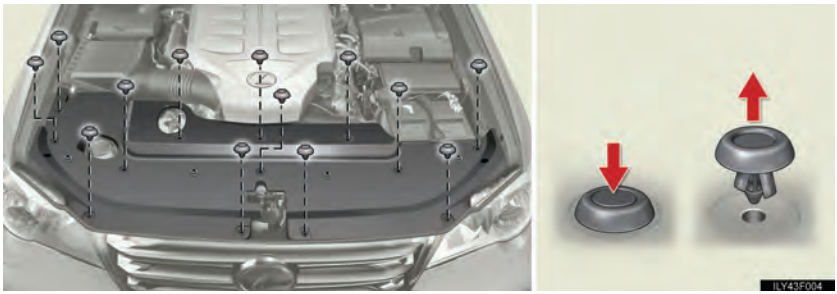
Engine compartment



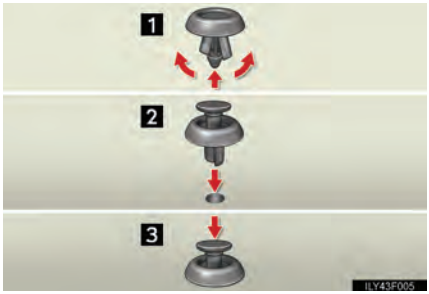
1 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 616)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 611)
3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 612)
4 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 619)
5 Fuse box (→P. 647)
6 Battery (→P. 623)
7 Radiator (→P. 618)
8 Condenser (→P. 618)
9 Electric cooling fan
10 Washer fluid tank (→P. 627)
11 Power steering fluid reservoir (→P. 621)

Engine compartment cover

Removing the engine compartment cover



Installing the clips



NOTICE

After installing an engine compartment cover

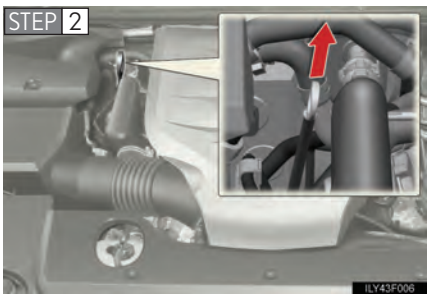
Make sure the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than five minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



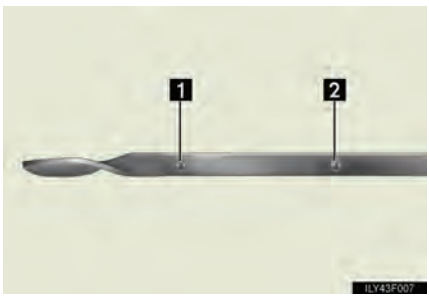
Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



1 Low
2 Full

Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 755
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp.qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km).
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)**

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

STEP 1 Press the Menu switch (→P. 212) to change the multi-information display to blank.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 3 While pressing the ODO/TRIP button (→P. 195), turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4 Continue to press and hold the button for more than 7 seconds after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



The message shown in the illustration will appear on the display. After 5 seconds, the system reset will be completed.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

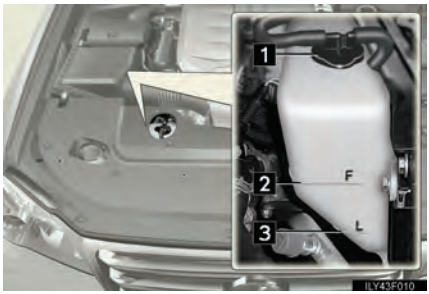
Check the oil level on regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly retightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “F” and “L” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



1 Reservoir cap
2 Full
3 Low

If the level is on or below the “L” line, add coolant up to the “F” line.

Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50 % coolant and 50 % deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -31 °F [-35 °C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55 % coolant and 45 % deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -44 °F [-42 °C])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

CAUTION

When the engine is hot

Do not remove the radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

When adding the coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it damage to parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Brake fluid

Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the “MAX” and “MIN” lines on the tank.

Adding fluid

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary item.

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

CAUTION

When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets on your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

NOTICE

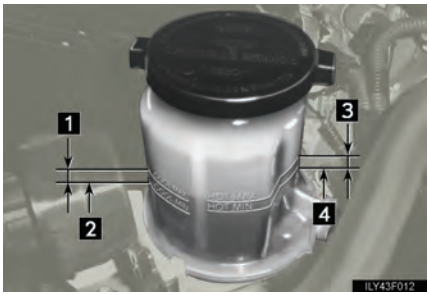
If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Power steering fluid

Fluid level

The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.



1 Full (when cold)
2 Add fluid (when cold)
3 Full (when hot)
4 Add fluid (when hot)

Hot: The vehicles has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140 °F - 175 °F [60 °C - 80 °C]).

Cold: The engine has not been run for about 5 hours. (Room temperature, 50 °F - 85 °F [10 °C - 30 °C]).

Checking the fluid level

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III
Items	Rag or paper, clean funnel (only for adding fluid)

STEP 1 Clean all dirt off the reservoir.
STEP 2 Remove the cap by turning it counterclockwise.
STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.
STEP 4 Reinstall the cap and remove it again.
STEP 5 Check the fluid level.

CAUTION

When checking the reservoir

Take care as the reservoir may be hot.

NOTICE

When adding fluid

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

After replacing the reservoir cap

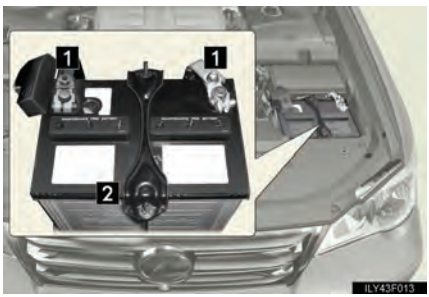
Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

Battery

Check the battery as follows:

Battery exterior

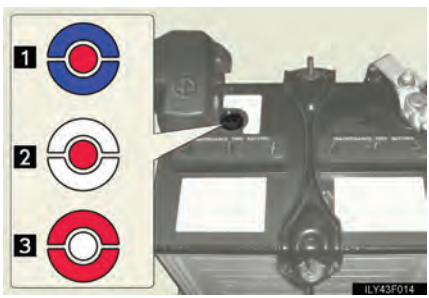
Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

Checking battery condition

Check the battery condition by indicator color.



1 Blue: Good condition
2 White: Charging is necessary. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
3 Red: Not working properly. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

- Unlocking the doors using the smart key system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch turned OFF. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Chemicals in the battery

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the battery

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and seek immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

CAUTION

When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

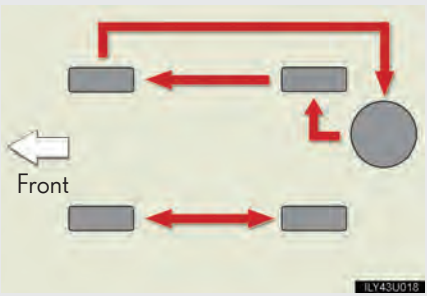


1 New tread
2 Treadwear indicator
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "Δ" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 693)

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 629)

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **Tire life**

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires**

The effectiveness of the tire as snow tires is lost.

■ **Maximum load of tire**

Check that the number given by dividing the maximum load by 1.10 of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.



For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire.
(→P. 768)

Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 366)

Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

Tire pressure warning system certification

TPMS Transmitter FCC ID: PAXPMV107J

TPMS Receiver FCC ID: HYQ13BCX

For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

CAUTION

Tire pressure warning system operation

The tire pressure warning system may not provide warning immediately if a tire bursts or if sudden air leakage occurs.

When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters and tire valve caps

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 629)

Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

If tire inflation pressures become low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 762)



Inspection and adjustment procedure



1 Tire valve
2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust tire pressure.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every 2 weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

⚠ NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps back on.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps are lost, replace them as soon as possible.

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened
- Lexus wheels with after market chrome plating

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- When balancing your wheels, use only Lexus genuine balance weights or the equivalent. If clip-on balance weights are being used, use a plastic or rubber hammer to install the weight.

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 629)

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

When installing the wheel nuts



- Be sure to install the wheel nuts with the tapered ends facing inward. Installing the nuts with the tapered ends facing outward can cause the wheel to break and eventually cause the wheel to come off while driving, which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

NOTICE

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

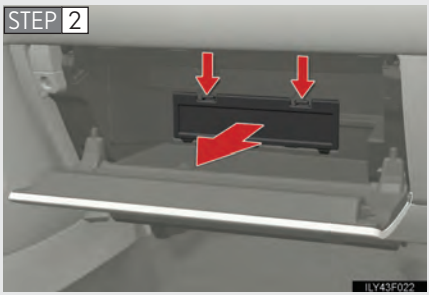
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

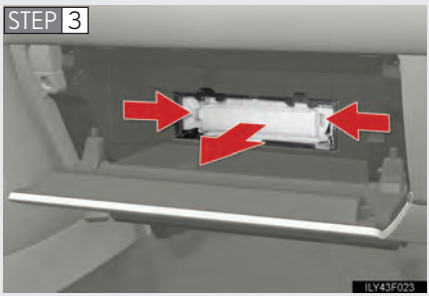
STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2



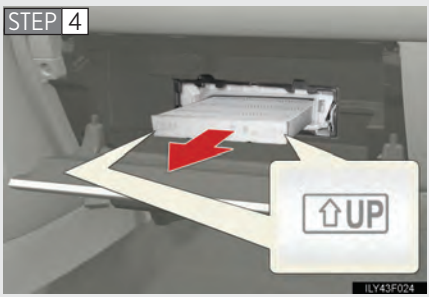
Open the glove box and remove the glove box cover.

STEP 3



Remove the filter cover.

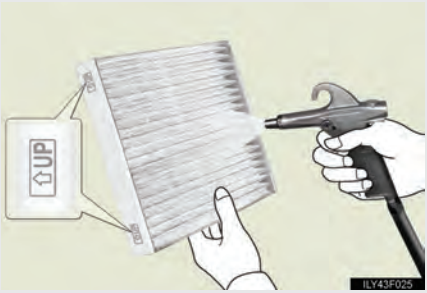
STEP 4



Replace the filter with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

Cleaning method



If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the under side.

Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 72 psi (500 kPa, 5.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar).

If an air gun is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

Changing interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the system

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

Replacing the battery

STEP 1



Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

■ **Use a CR1632 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **If the electronic key battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2 Open the fuse box cover.

Engine compartment



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

STEP 3 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" (→P. 650) for details about which fuse to check.

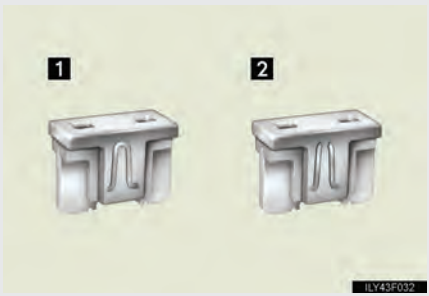
STEP 4 Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.



Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.

STEP 5 Check if the fuse has blown.

Type A

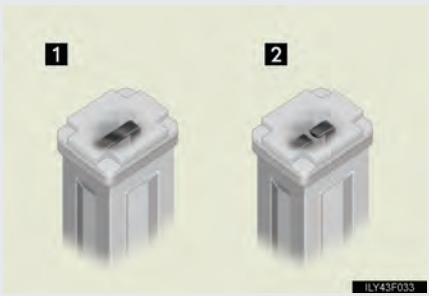


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type B

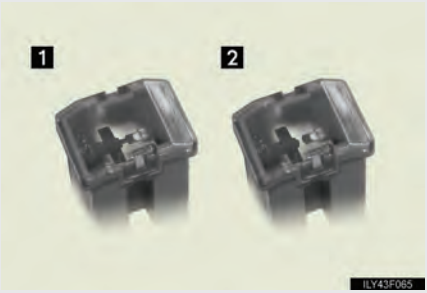


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

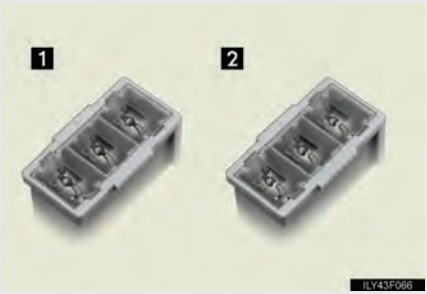
Type C



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

Type D

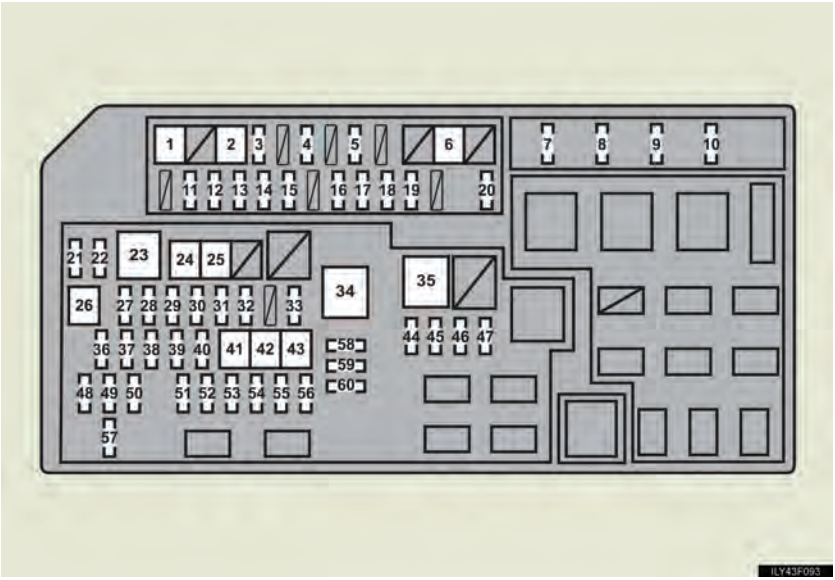


1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

Engine compartment



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	A/C RR	40 A	Rear air conditioning system
2	AIR SUS	50 A	Air suspension system, AIR SUS NO.2
3	INV	15 A	Inverter
4	DEF	30 A	Rear window defogger
5	DEICER	20 A	Windshield wiper deicer

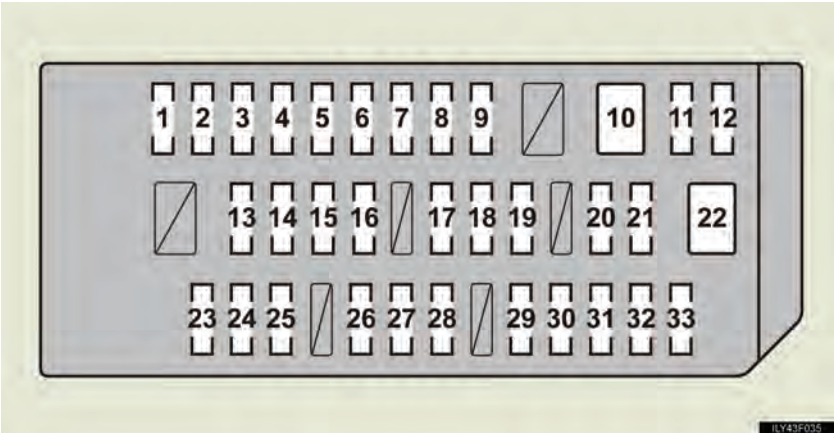
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
6	SUB BATT	30 A	Towing
7	IG2	20 A	Injector, ignition, meter
8	HORN	10 A	Horn
9	EFI	25 A	EFI ECU, A/F heater relay, fuel pump relay, EFI NO.2
10	A/F	20 A	A/F SSR
11	FUEL OPN	10 A	Fuel lid opener
12	S/HTR RR	20 A	Rear seat heater
13	FOLD SEAT LH	30 A	Folding seat (left)
14	FOLD SEAT RH	30 A	Folding seat (right)
15	TOWING TAIL	30 A	Towing
16	A/C COMP	10 A	Air conditioning system
17	STRG HTR	10 A	Steering heater
18	CDS FAN	20 A	Condenser fan
19	STOP	10 A	Stop lights, high mount stop light, stop light switch, VSC ECU, towing, Smart access system with push button start
20	AIR SUS NO.2	7.5 A	AIR SUS ECU
21	H-LP RH-HI	15 A	Headlight high beam (right)
22	H-LP LH-HI	15 A	Headlight high beam (left)

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
23	HTR	50 A	Air conditioning system
24	WIP WSH RR	30 A	Rear window wipers and washer
25	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
26	ST	30 A	STARTER MTR
27	H-LP HI	25 A	DIM relay, headlights, daytime running light system
28	ALT-S	7.5 A	ALT
29	TURN & HAZ	15 A	Front turn signal light, rear turn signal light, side turn signal light, meter turn signal light
30	D/L NO.1	25 A	Door lock motor, glass hatch opener
31	ETCS	10 A	EFI ECU
32	FUEL PMP	15 A	FPC
33	TOWING	30 A	Towing
34	ALT	140 A	Air conditioning system, AIR SUS, headlight cleaner, towing, folding seat, STOP, rear window defogger, MIR HTR, CDS FAN, RR FOG, DEICER, MG-CLT, RR SEAT HTR, STRG HTR, J/B, INV, RR WIP, RR WSH
35	P/I-B	80 A	Injector, ignition, meter, EFI, A/F heater, horn

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
36	RAD NO.1	15 A	Audio system, navigation system, rear seat entertainment system
37	AM2	7.5 A	Starter system
38	RAD NO.2	10 A	Navigation system
39	MAYDAY	7.5 A	MAYDAY
40	AMP	30 A	Audio system
41	ABS NO.1	50 A	ABS, VSC
42	ABS NO.2	30 A	ABS, VSC
43	AIR PMP	50 A	Air pump
44	SECURITY	10 A	SECURITY
45	SMART	7.5 A	Smart access system with push button start
46	STRG LOCK	20 A	Steering lock system
47	TOWING BRK	30 A	Towing
48	WIP RR	15 A	Rear window wiper
49	DOME	10 A	Interior lights, personal lights, vanity lights, door courtesy lights, footwell lights, outer foot lights, overhead module

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
50	ECU-B	10 A	BODY ECU, meter, heater, steering sensor, wireless remote control, seat position memory, tilt and telescopic steering, multi display, Smart access system with push button start, folding seat, cool box, DSS#2 ECU, steering switch, D-module switch, overhead module
51	WSH FR NO.2	7.5 A	DSS#1 ECU
52	H-LP RH-LO	15 A	Headlight low beam (right), headlight leveling system
53	H-LP LH-LO	15 A	Headlight low beam (left), headlight leveling system
54	INJ	10 A	Coil, injector, ignition, noise filter
55	EFI NO.2	10 A	O2 SSR, AFM, ACIS VSV, AI COMB, KEY OFF PUMP, EYP VSV, EGR VALVE, CANISTER VSV, AI VSV RLY, AI PUMP HTR RLY
56	WIP FR NO.2	7.5 A	DSS#1 ECU
57	WSH RR	15 A	Rear window washer
58	SPARE	—	Spare fuse
59	SPARE	—	Spare fuse
60	SPARE	—	Spare fuse

Under the instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	P/OUTLET	15 A	Power outlet
2	ACC	7.5 A	Outside rear view mirror motor, BODY ECU, air conditioning system, audio system, navigation system, parking assist system, back up relay, DSS#2 ECU, AT indicator, EFI ECU, shift lock ECU, DCM, MAYDAY ECU
3	BKUP LP	10 A	Back-up lights, audio system, multi information display, DSS#2 ECU, parking assist sensor
4	TOWING BKLP	10 A	Towing
5	AVS	20 A	Air suspension system
6	KDSS	10 A	KDSS ECU

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
7	4WD	20 A	4WD system, rear differential lock
8	P/SEAT FL	30 A	Front power seat (left)
9	D/L NO.2	25 A	Door lock motor, glass hatch opener, BODY ECU
10	PSB	30 A	PSB ECU
11	TI & TE	15 A	Tilt and telescopic steering
12	FOG FR	15 A	Front fog lights
13	OBD	7.5 A	DLC 3
14	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioning system
15	AM1	7.5 A	Starting system
16	DOOR RL	25 A	Rear power window (left)
17	ECU-IG NO.1	10 A	Shift lock ECU, VSC ECU, steering sensor, yaw rate sensor, sequential switch, auto wiper ECU, back up relay, tilt & telescopic steering, PSB ECU, DSS#1 ECU, front radar sensor, AFS ECU, TIRE PRESS ECU, DRIVER MON ECU
18	IG1	7.5 A	Front turn signal light, rear turn signal light, side turn signal light, meter turn signal light, trailer light, ALT, VSC, C/C switch

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
19	ECU-IG NO.2	10 A	Rear window defogger, outside rear view mirror memory, seat heater/ventilator switch, inverter relay, air conditioning system, EC mirror, BODY ECU, exhaust gas sensor, parking assist sensor, navigation system, DSS#2 ECU, meter switch, accessory meter, folding seat ECU, O/H IG, head light cleaner, rear air conditioning system, deicer, D-module, rain sensor, air suspension, RR VLV ECU, steering heater, LKA, P/SEAT IND
20	S/HTR FR	20 A	Seat heater and ventilator
21	P/SEAT FR	30 A	Front power seat (right)
22	DOOR P	30 A	Front power window (passenger's side), outside rear view mirror memory
23	DOOR	10 A	Power window
24	DOOR D	25 A	Front power window (driver's side)
25	DOOR RR	25 A	Rear power window (right)
26	S/ROOF	25 A	Moon roof
27	WIP	30 A	Windshield wipers and washer
28	WASHER	20 A	Windshield wipers and washer, rear window wipers and washer
29	COOLING	10 A	Cool box

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
30	IGN	10 A	EFI ECU, C/OPN RLY, VSC ECU, air bag ECU, smart entry & start system, steering lock ECU, CAN gateway ECU
31	GAUGE	7.5 A	Meter
32	PANEL	7.5 A	Switch illumination, glove box light, cup holder lights, auxiliary box light, navigation system, audio system, air conditioning system, outside rear view mirror switch, folding seat switch, multi-information display, P/SEAT IND, SHIFT, COOL BOX
33	TAIL	10 A	Front position lights, tail lights, license plate lights, EFI ECU, rear fog lights, towing, front fog lights

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 662)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in a circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

NOTICE

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Headlight aim (vehicles with low beam halogen bulbs)*

Vertical movement adjustment bolts



1 Adjustment bolt A
2 Adjustment bolt B

Before checking the headlight aim

STEP 1 Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.

STEP 2 Park the vehicle on level ground.

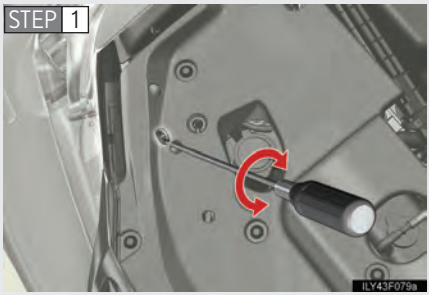
STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat.

STEP 4 Bounce the vehicle several times.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the headlight aim

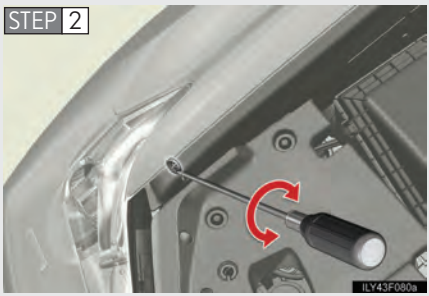
STEP 1



Turn bolt A in either direction using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns.

STEP 2



Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as in step 1 using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

If the headlight cannot be adjusted using this procedure, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.
For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

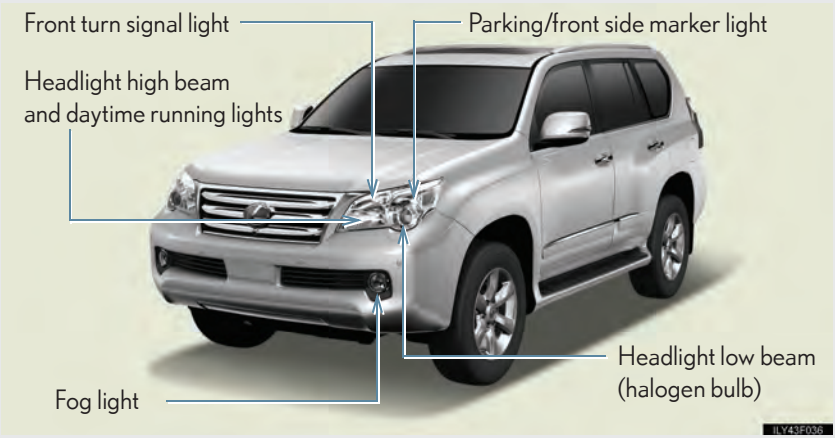
Prepare a replacement light bulb

Check the wattage and color of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 763)

Remove the engine compartment cover

→P. 610

Front bulb locations

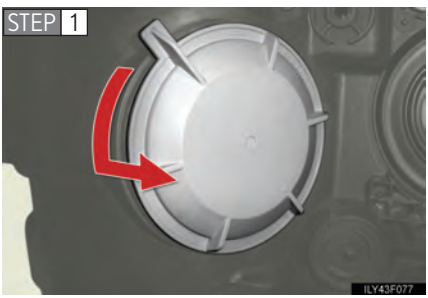


Rear bulb locations



Replacing light bulbs

Headlight low beams (vehicles with halogen bulbs)



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

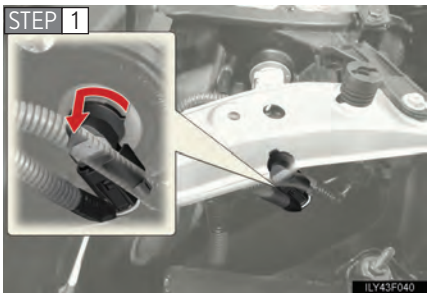


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

Headlight high beams and daytime running lights



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



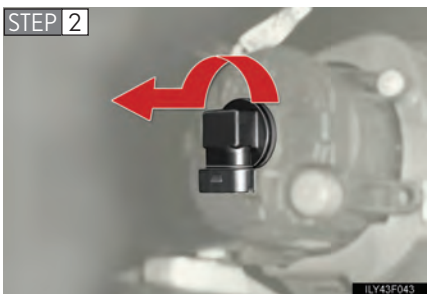
Unplug the connector while pushing the lock release.

Fog lights



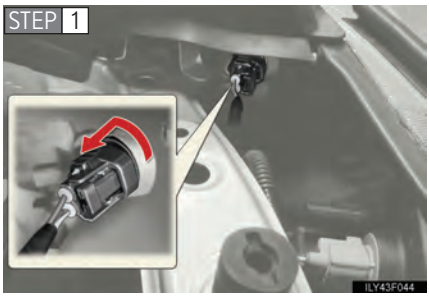
1 Remove the fender liner bolt and partly remove the fender liner.

2 Unplug the connector while pushing the lock release.

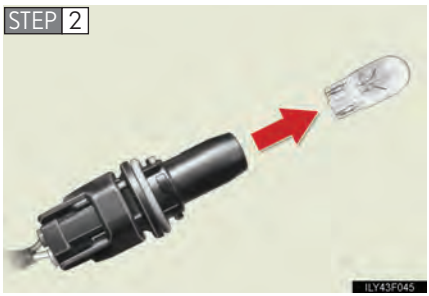


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

Parking/front side marker lights

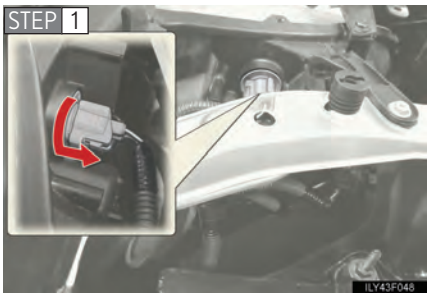


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

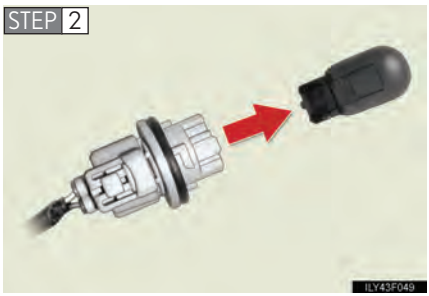


Remove the light bulb.

Front turn signal lights



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

Rear turn signal and rear side marker lights

STEP 1 Open the back door.



Left-hand side:

Remove the bolts and lamp assembly.

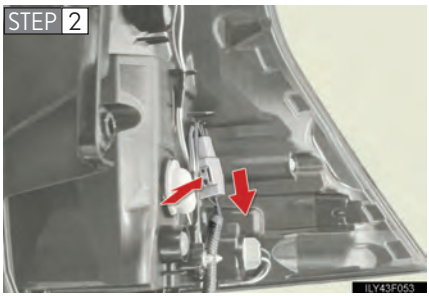


Right-hand side:

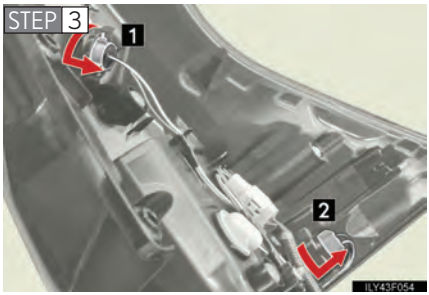
Remove the bolts.



Close the back door half way and remove the lamp assembly.

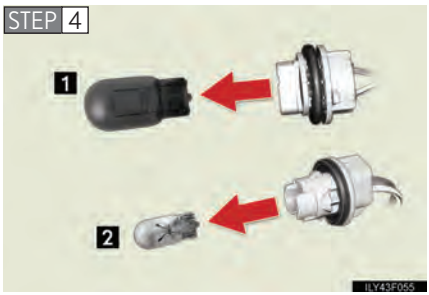


Unplug the connector while pushing the lock release.



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

1 Rear turn signal light
2 Rear side marker light



Remove the light bulb.

1 Rear turn signal light
2 Rear side marker light

Back-up lights

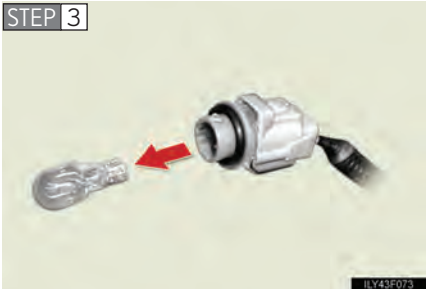


Remove the bolts and pull down the under cover.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Headlight low beams (high-intensity discharge bulbs)
- Side turn signal lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Stop/tail lights
- License plate light
- Outer foot light

■ **High-intensity discharge (HID) headlights**

If voltage to the high-intensity discharge bulbs is insufficient, the light may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The high-intensity discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

■ **LED light bulbs**

The side turn signal lights, tail/stop lights, license plate light and high mounted stoplight consist of a number of LEDs. If any LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

If two or more LEDs in a stoplight burn out, your vehicle may not conform to local laws (SAE).

■ **Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens**

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
  If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

■ High-intensity discharge (HID) headlights

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing high-intensity discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in death or serious injury by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
  Doing so may result in serious injury due to electric shock.

■ To prevent damage or fire

- Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

When trouble arises 5

5-1. Essential information

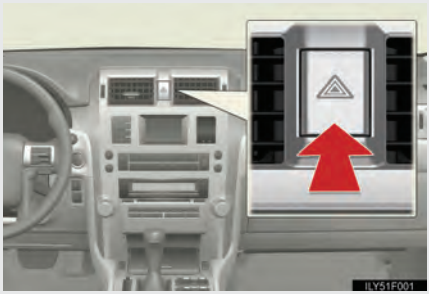
Emergency flashers..... 676
If your vehicle needs to be towed..... 677
If you think something is wrong 683
Fuel pump shut off system.... 684
Event data recorder 685

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds..... 688
If a warning message is displayed..... 700
If you have a flat tire..... 721
If the engine will not start 735
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 737
If you lose your keys 738
If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 739
If the vehicle battery is discharged 741
If your vehicle overheats 744
If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 747
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 749

Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.



Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, push the switch once again.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition.

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hooks. This should only attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Towing hook



Towing with a sling-type truck



Do not tow with a sling type truck to prevent body damage.

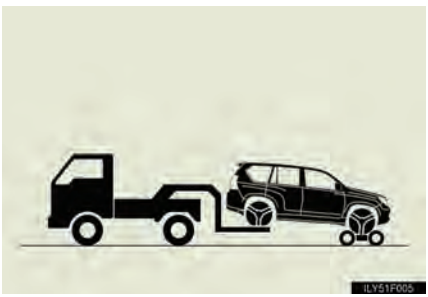
Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

From front



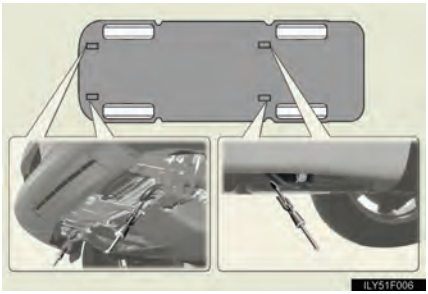
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

From rear

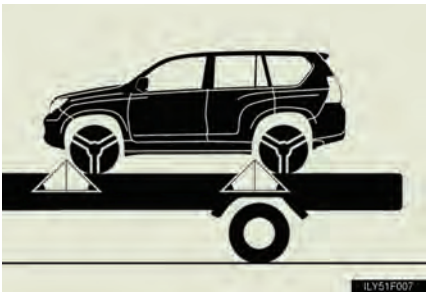


Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

■ Before emergency towing

STEP 1 The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in the ACCESSORY mode (engine off) or IGNITION ON mode (engine running).

STEP 2 Put the four-wheel drive control switch in H4. (The center differential is unlocked.)

STEP 3 Put the vehicle height in the N mode and press height control switch to turn off the rear height control air suspension.

STEP 4 Shift the shift lever in N.

STEP 5 Release the parking brake.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- Do not turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
  Doing so will lock the steering wheel and prevent operation, possibly causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and transfer when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels in contact with the ground.

■ To avoid serious damage to your vehicle



Do not use the rear emergency towing hook.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ To prevent body damage when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and transfer in emergency towing

Never tow a vehicle from the rear with four wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is an event data recorder (EDR) that records data in a crash or a near car crash event.

In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data
- Front passenger's occupant classification
- Whether the "RSCA OFF" indicator was turned on or off

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Necessary, for use as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court of a law

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
BRAKE (U.S.A.) (Canada)	**Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*** • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:
A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) or more.

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system while the engine is running.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Malfunction in: • The emission control system; • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**SRS warning light** Malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; • The front passenger occupant classification system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system.
ABS (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**ABS warning light** Malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system.
	**Slip indicator light** Malfunction in: • The VSC; • The active traction control system; The indicator will blink when the system listed above or below is operational. (→P. 337) • The downhill assist control system*; • The hill-start assist control system*; or • Crawl Control system*.
PCS (Flashing)	**"PCS" warning light*** Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system. The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning: • The light will flash quickly when the system is operating. (→P. 343) • The light will turn on when the pre-crash braking is disabled. (→P. 344) • The light will turn on when the system cannot temporarily be used. (→P. 707)

Warning light	Warning light/Details
AFS OFF (Flashing)	**"AFS OFF" indicator light*** Indicates a malfunction in the AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System). (→P. 223)
AUTO (Flashing)	**Automatic High Beam indicator light*** Indicates a malfunction in the automatic high beam system. (→P. 226)
LDA (Flashing)	**"LDA" indicator light*** Indicates a malfunction in the lane departure alert. (→P. 275)
(Flashing)	**Cruise control indicator light*** Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system. (→P. 246, 250)
(Flashing)	**Radar cruise control indicator light*** Indicates a malfunction in the Dynamic radar cruise control system. (→P. 250)
KDSS	**Kinetic dynamic suspension system warning light** Malfunction in the kinetic dynamic suspension system.
(Flashing)	**Multi-terrain Select indicator light*** Indicates a malfunction in the Multi-terrain Select system. (→P. 296)
4LO	**Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in the four-wheel drive system if the light continues flashing. (→P. 322)
	Center differential lock indicator light Indicates a malfunction in the four-wheel drive system if the light continues flashing. (→P. 322)

*: If equipped

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1** A door or a back door is not fully closed.	Check that all doors and the back door are closed.
	**Low fuel level warning light** Remaining fuel (Approximately 3.4 gal. [13.0 L, 2.8 Imp.gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
 (On the instrument panel)	**Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (On the center panel)	**Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 700
	**Tire pressure warning light** When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure.	Adjust the tire inflation pressure.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]). (→P. 704)

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts reminder buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his/her seat belt is not fastened. Once the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 4 to 8 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h), the buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ **SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensors, rear side and curtain shield airbag sensors, floor sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors), "AIR BAG ON" indicator light, "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light, the "RSCA OFF" indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, inflators, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (→P. 122)

■ **Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

First check the following:

- Is your vehicle low on gas?
  If it is, refuel the vehicle immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after taking several driving trips.
If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ **If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative**

The tire pressure warning system will become inoperative in the following conditions:
(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may become inoperative in the following conditions:
(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use genuine Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the luggage compartment.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the engine switch is turned to the "ON" position, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)

Make sure to reset the oil maintenance data. (→P. 614)

CAUTION

■ If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

CAUTION

Maintenance of the tires

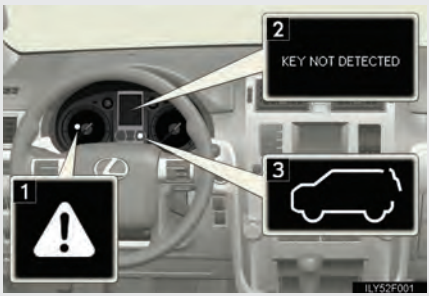
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.
TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

Precaution when installing a different tire

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning is shown on the instrument cluster, stay calm and perform the following actions:



1 Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the instrument cluster.

2 Multi-information display

3 Rear height control air suspension display

If any of the warning lights comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

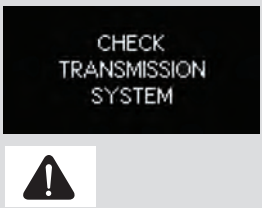
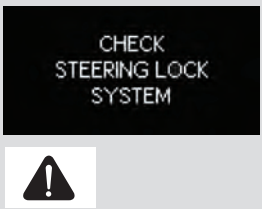
Stop the vehicle immediately.

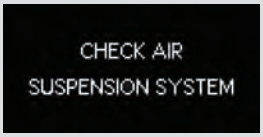
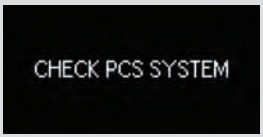
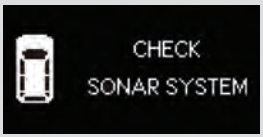
A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning message	Details
	**Indicates abnormal engine oil pressure** The warning light may come on if the engine oil pressure is too low.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

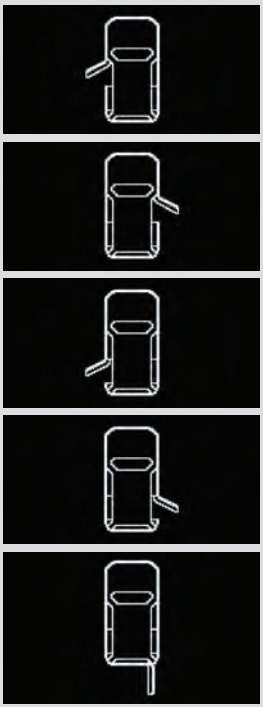
Warning message	Details
	**Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high** Stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to P and wait until the message goes off. If the message goes off, you may start the vehicle again.
	**Indicates a malfunction in the automatic transmission system**
	**Indicates a malfunction in the steering lock system**

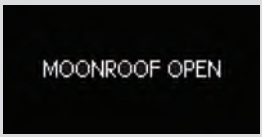
Warning message	Details
  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the rear height control air suspension system**
 PCS (Flashes)  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system**
  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the intuitive parking assist** The malfunctioning assist-sensor is flashing.

Warning message	Details
CHECK CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM  (Flashes) or  (Flashes)  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the radar cruise control system** Press the “ON-OFF” button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
CHECK LDA SYSTEM LDA (Flashes)  (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the LDA system** Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off and then turn it to IGNITION ON mode again to reset the LDA system.

Follow the correction procedures.

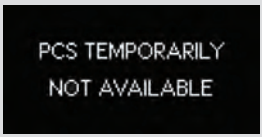
A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message goes off.

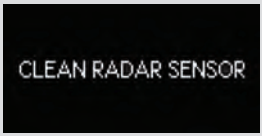
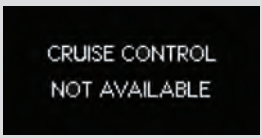
Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	**Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed** The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h),  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed.	Make sure that all the doors are closed.

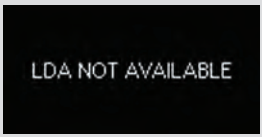
Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	**Indicates that the glass hatch is not fully closed*** If the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h), ⚠ flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the glass hatch is not yet fully closed.	Close the glass hatch.
 ⚠ (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, and the driver's door open)**	Close the moon roof.

*: The graphic is shown on the Rear height control air suspension display.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
RELEASE PARKING BRAKE	**Indicates that the parking brake is still engaged** If the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h),  flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged.	Release the parking brake.
LOW WASHER FLUID	**Indicates that the washer fluid level is low**	Add washer fluid.
OIL MAINTENANCE REQUIRED SOON (U.S.A. only)	**Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed**	Check the engine oil, and change if necessary.
	Comes on approximately 4500 miles (7200 km) after the engine oil is changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance data has been reset.)	

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (U.S.A. only)	**Indicates that the engine oil and oil filter should be changed**	Have the engine oil and oil filter checked and changed by your Lexus dealer.
 PCS (Turns on) (If equipped)	**Indicates that the pre-collision system is not currently functional**	Clean the grille and the sensor. This message appears when the pre-collision system is hot. In this case, wait until the system cools down.
 (If equipped)	**Indicates that intuitive parking assist is dirty or covered with ice** A buzzer also sounds.	Clean the sensor.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
  (Flashes)  (If equipped)	**Indicates that the radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice** A buzzer also sounds.	Clean the sensor.
  (Flashes)  (If equipped)	**Indicates that the radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance** A buzzer also sounds.	If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to a mode other than "AUTO" or high speed wiper operation.
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in radar cruise mode)**	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.

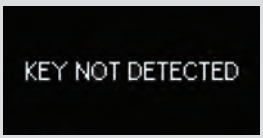
Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 PCS (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that there is a high possibility of a collision, or that the pre-crash brake function is operating**	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.
 (If equipped)	**Indicates that the LDA is suspended** The camera sensor temperature is higher than the operation temperature range.	Reactivate the lane departure alert system.
 (If equipped)	**Alerts the driver that the vehicle may deviate from its lane (while the LDA system is operating).** The lane markings flash.	Check the road conditions and correct the driving path appropriately.

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light go off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	KEY NOT DETECTED  (Flashes)	The electronic key is not detected when an attempt is made to start the engine.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.

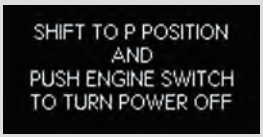
Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	Sounds 3 times	KEY NOT DETECTED	The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and a door other than the driver's door was opened and closed while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in a mode other than off.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
		 (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	Sounds once	  (Displayed alternately)  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and lock the doors again.
Sounds once	—	  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally. An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle.	Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Continuous	—	SHIFT TO P POSITION WHEN ALIGHTING (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened when the shift lever was not in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off.	Shift the shift lever to P.
Continuous	Continuous	SHIFT TO P POSITION WHEN ALIGHTING KEY NOT DETECTED (Displayed alternately) (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was not in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned off.	• Shift the shift lever to P. • Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

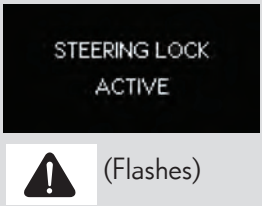
Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	Continuous	KEY DETECTED IN VEHICLE (Flashes)	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart access system with push-button start while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.
			An attempt was made to lock either front door by opening a door and putting the inside lock button into the lock position, then closing the door by pulling on the outside door handle with the electronic key still inside the vehicle.	

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL, TOUCH ENGINE SWITCH WITH KEY (Flashes)	• When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. • The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed two consecutive times.	Touch the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to start the engine with the shift lever in an incorrect position.	Shift the shift lever to P and start the engine.
Sounds once	—	  (Flashes)	An attempt was made to turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off when the shift lever was not in P.	To turn off the engine, first shift the shift lever to P and then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

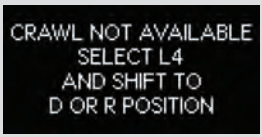
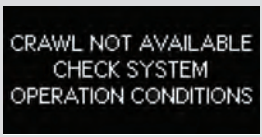
Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
—	—	AUTO POWER OFF TO CONSERVE BATTERY	Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function.	Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.
Sounds once	—	KEY BATTERY LOW 	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery. (→P. 644)

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL AND PUSH ENGINE SWITCH TO START	The driver's door was opened and closed with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch turned off and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was put in ACCESSORY mode twice without the engine being started.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal.
		(Flashes)	During an engine starting procedure in the event that the electronic key was not functioning properly (→P. 739), the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was touched with the electronic key.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	 (Flashes)	The steering lock could not be released within 3 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being pressed.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal and moving the steering wheel left and right.

Other messages

If the following message is displayed, take appropriate action and confirm that the message has disappeared. (→P. 328)

Message	Correction procedure
 (If equipped)	**Select the four-wheel driving position switch in L4 and shift the shift lever to D or R.**
 (If equipped)	**Confirm the operating conditions.**

■ **Warning light display in radar cruise mode (if equipped)**

In the following cases, the warning light may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases:

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

■ **After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)**

Make sure to reset the oil maintenance data. (→P. 614)

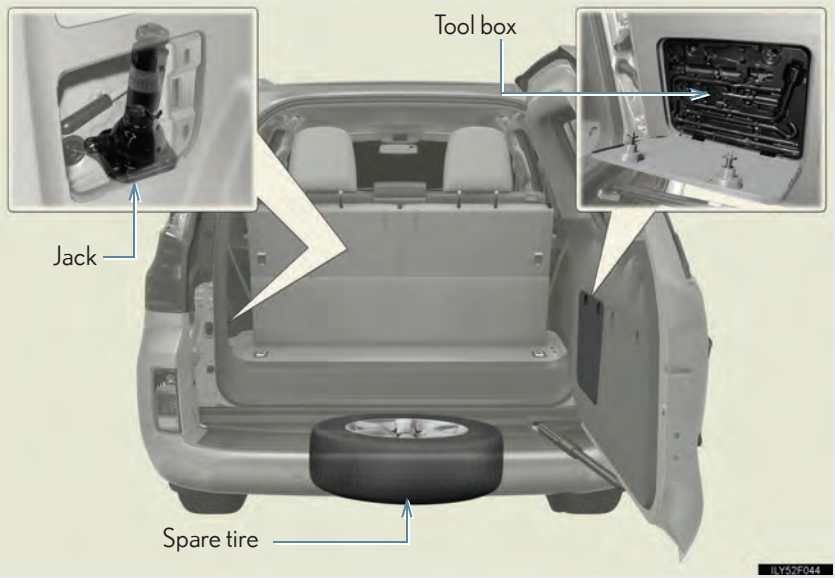
If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

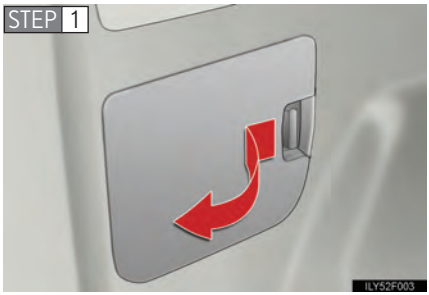
Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Vehicles with rear height control air suspension: Turn off the height control. (→P. 316)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 676)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



Taking out the jack



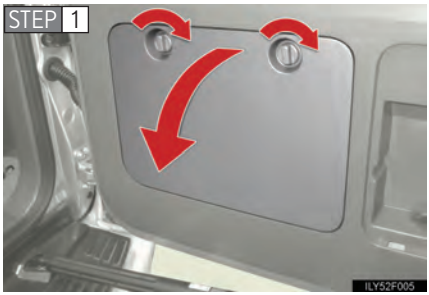
Remove the cover.



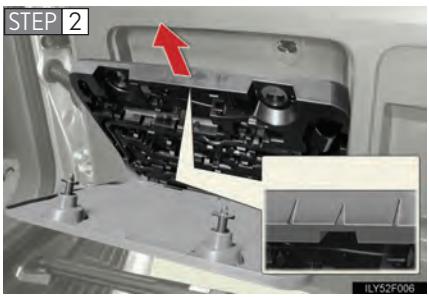
Unhook the rubber band and take out the jack.

1 For loosening
2 For tightening

Taking out the tool box



Remove the cover.

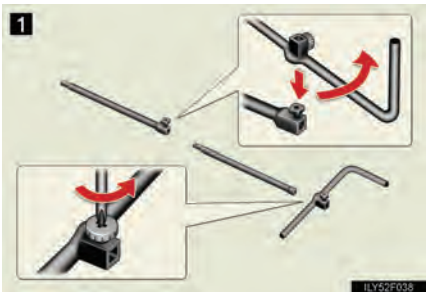


Take out the tool box.

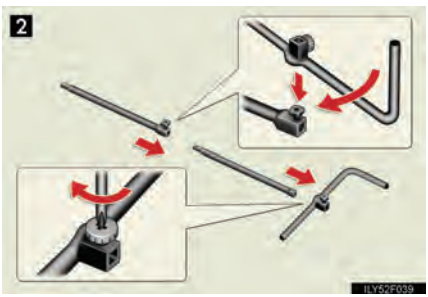
Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle extension bar from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.

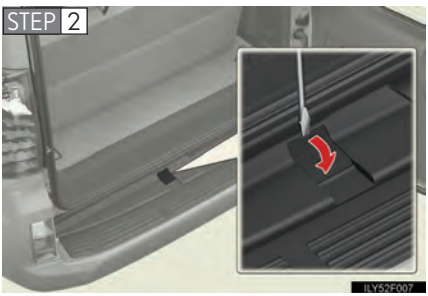


1 Loosen the bolt and the screw using either the jack handle end or a screwdriver.

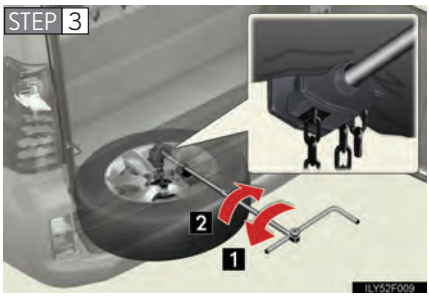


2 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle and tighten the bolt and the screw.

Check that the bolt and screw are firmly tightened.



Remove the spare tire carrier lid using a flathead screwdriver.

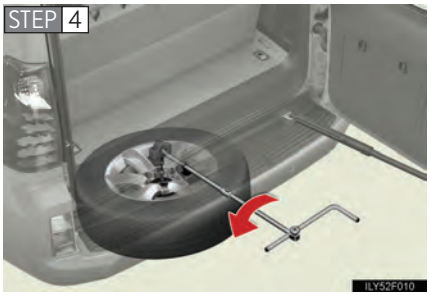


Insert the jack handle extension into the lowering socket.

1 Lower

2 Raise

Place a rag under the jack handle extension to protect the bumper.



Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.

If the spare tire becomes caught on the suspension components, raise the tire, pull it towards the rear of the vehicle, and begin lowering it again.



Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

Replacing a flat tire

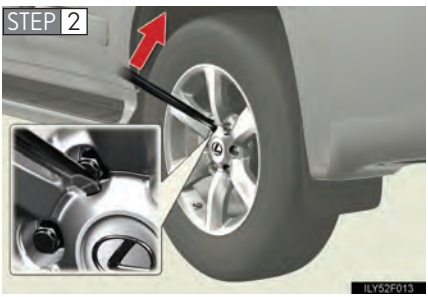
STEP 1



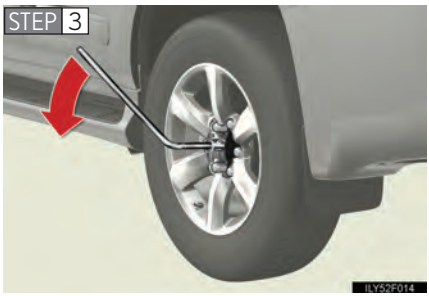
Chock the tires.

Flat tire		Wheel chock position
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

STEP 2



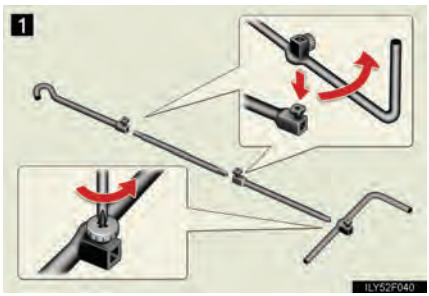
Pry off the wheel ornament, using the beveled end of the wheel ornament remover as shown.



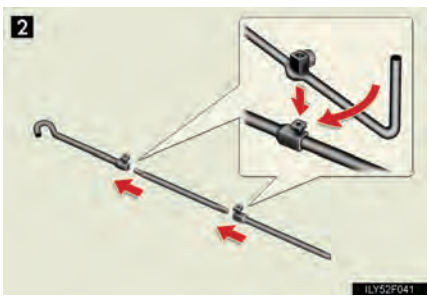
Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 4 Assembling the jack handle.

Remove the jack handle, jack handle extension bar and jack handle bar from the tool box and assemble by following these steps.

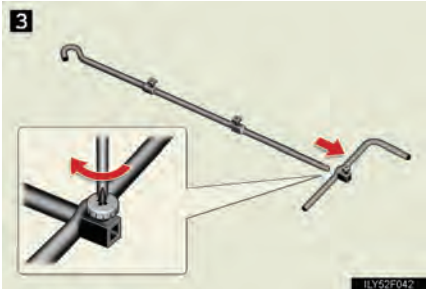


1 Loosen the bolt and the screw using either the jack handle end or a screwdriver.



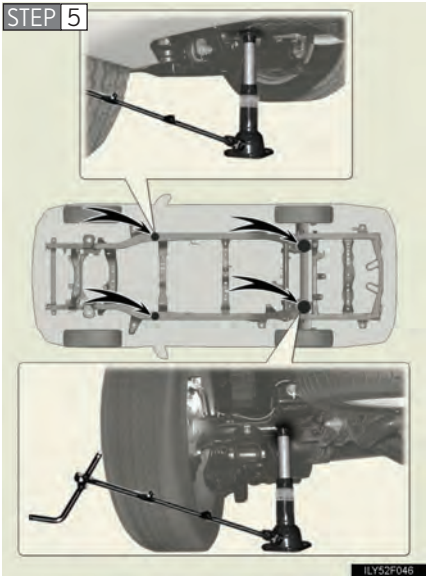
2 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle bar and tighten the bolts.

Check that the bolts are firmly tightened.



3 Assemble the jack handle extension bar and the jack handle and tighten the screw.

Check that the screw is firmly tightened.



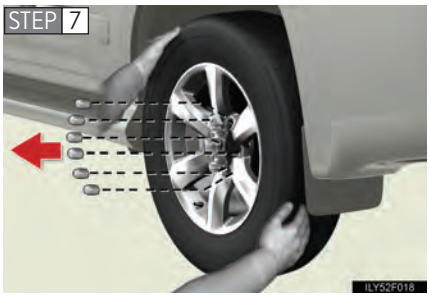
Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Front - Under the chassis frame side rail

Rear - Under the rear axle housing



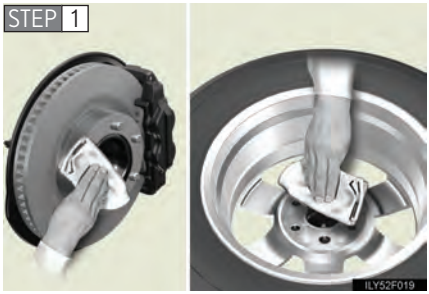
Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

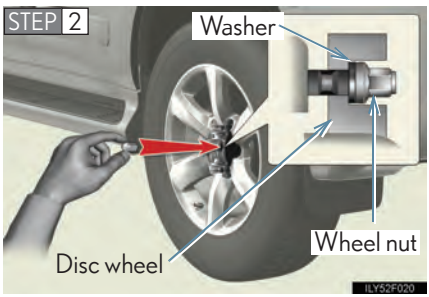
When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Installing the spare tire



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

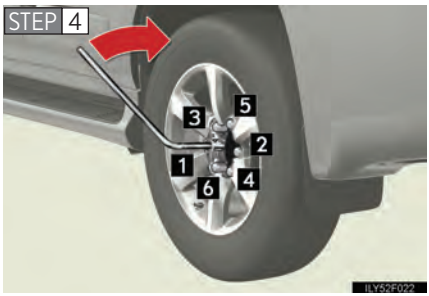


Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Turn the lug nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.

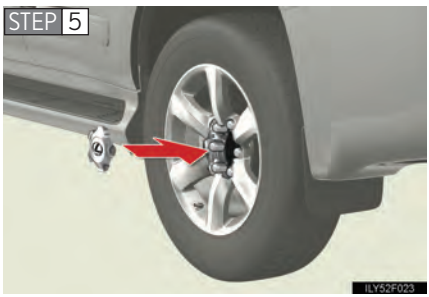


Lower the vehicle.



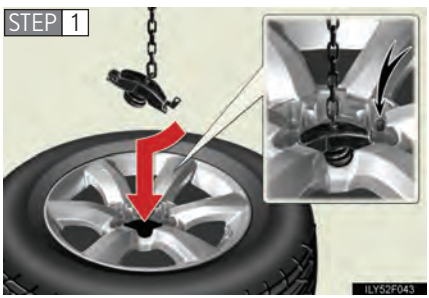
Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
83 ft•lbf (112 N•m, 11.4 kgf•m)



Reinstall the wheel ornament.

Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools



Lay down the tire with the outer side facing up, and install the holding bracket.

Insert the holding bracket tab into one of the holes in the wheel.

STEP 2 Raise the tire.

Pull the tire towards the rear of the vehicle when raising. After raising, visually check that the tire is not interfering with suspension components.

STEP 3 Stow the tools and jack securely, and replace all covers.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Be sure to turn off the rear height control air suspension and stop the engine.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

■ Using the jack handle

Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using a Phillips-head screwdriver, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

CAUTION

Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
  - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 83 ft•lbf (112 N•m, 11.4 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - When installing the wheel nuts, be sure to install them with the tapered ends facing inward. (→P. 640)

After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

When stowing the flat tire

- Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.
- To avoid damaging the suspension system, make sure that the spare tire does not interfere with the suspension components when stowed.

When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 629)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 179), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 179)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 115)

The starter motor turns over slowly, interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 741)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 739)

The starter motor does not turn over, interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 741)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is functioning normally:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

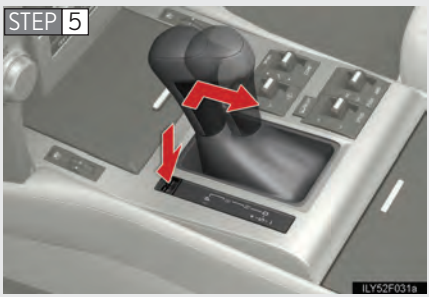
STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4



Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or tool.

STEP 5



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

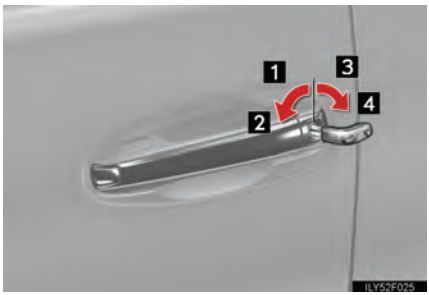
If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the other key and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 39) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors and key linked functions



Use the mechanical key (→P. 26) in order to perform the following operations (driver's door only):

1 Locks all the doors

2 Closes the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)*

3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

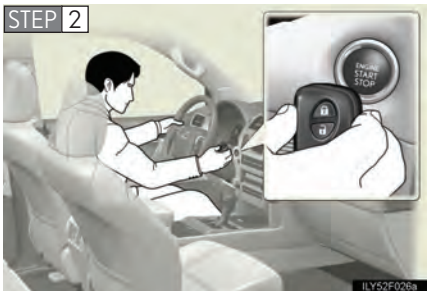
4 Opens the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)*

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes and starting the engine

STEP 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed while the key is being touched to the switch, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key.

STEP 3 To change "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes: Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 181)

To start the engine: Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to P and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted.
(→P. 644)

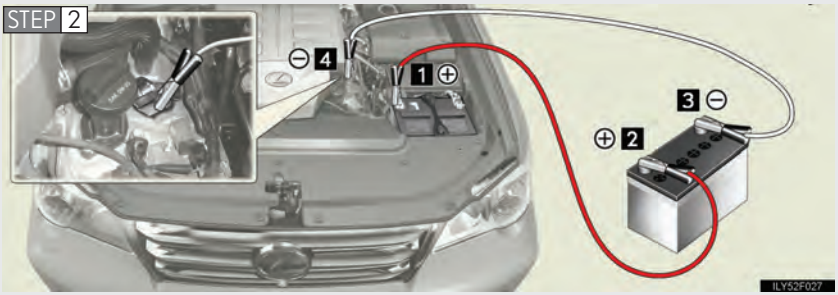
If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can call your Lexus dealer, or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12 volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus by following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the hood. (→P. 608)

STEP 2



Connecting the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

1 Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.
2 Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
3 Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
4 Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 6 Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or belt.

If your vehicle overheats

If the engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the automatic air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature gauge begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine and call your local Lexus dealer.

STEP 4



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

If the engine cover needs to be removed. (→P. 610)

STEP 5



Add engine coolant if required.

Water can be used as an emergency measure if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 757)

Have the vehicle checked at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

In the following situations, your vehicle may be overheating:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

CAUTION

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and engine drive belt while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot.
  Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

NOTICE

When adding engine coolant

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cold coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow:

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the center differential. (→ P. 323)

STEP 6 Release the parking brake and shift the shift lever to the D or R position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

Turn off TRAC and VSC if these functions are hampering your attempts to free the vehicle. (→P. 338)

⚠ CAUTION

When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and rev the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

If the shift lever is shifted to N

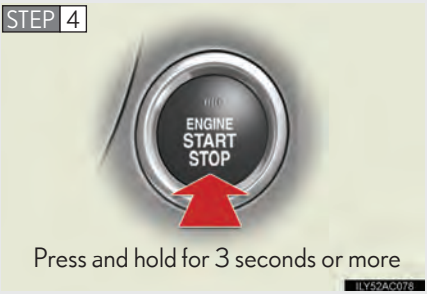
STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4



Stop the engine by pressing and holding the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 3 consecutive seconds or more.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

Vehicle specifications 6

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 752

Fuel information 764

Tire information 768

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 782

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 802

Dimensions and weight

Overall length		189.2 in. (4805 mm)
Overall width		74.2 in. (1885 mm)
Overall height*1		72.0 in. (1830 mm)*2,4
		71.7 in. (1820 mm)*3,4
		72.6 in. (1845 mm)*2,5
		72.2 in. (1835 mm)*3,5
		74.2 in. (1885 mm)*2,6
		73.8 in. (1875 mm)*3,6
Wheelbase		109.8 in. (2790 mm)
Tread	Front	62.4 in. (1585 mm)
	Rear	62.4 in. (1585 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		
With third seat		1315 lb. (595 kg)*2 1280 lb. (580 kg)*3
Without third seat		1525 lb. (690 kg)
Towing capacity		6500 lb. (2948 kg)

*1: Unladen vehicle
*2: Vehicles without rear height control air suspension
*3: Vehicles with rear height control air suspension
*4: Vehicles without an antenna and roof rails
*5: Vehicles without an antenna and with roof rails
*6: Vehicles with an antenna

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



This number is stamped on the front right frame.



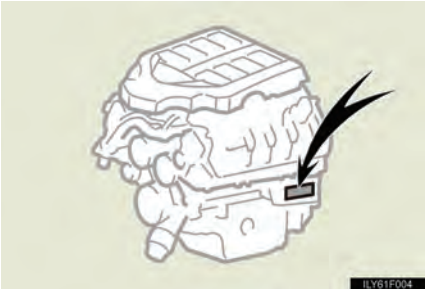
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label on the left-hand side center pillar.

Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



Engine

Model	1UR-FE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.27 in. (94.0 × 83.0 mm)
Displacement	281.2 cu.in. (4608 cm^3)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	23.0 gal. (87 L, 19.1 Imp.gal)

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference*) With filter Without filter	 8.2 qt. (7.8 L, 6.9 Imp.qt.) 7.8 qt. (7.4 L, 6.5 Imp.qt.)

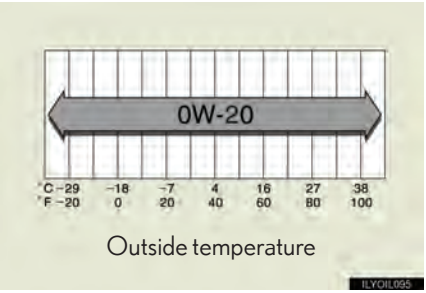
*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when exchanging. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 0W-20



SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 is not available, SAE 5W-20 oil may be used. However, it must be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



Cooling system

Capacity (reference)	With rear heater	16.3 qt. (15.4 L, 13.6 Imp.qt.)
	Without rear heater	14.5 qt. (13.7 L, 12.1 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • A similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO SK20HR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

Battery Open voltage* at 68 °F (20 °C):	12.6—12.8 V Fully charged 12.2—12.4 V Half charged 11.8—12.0 V Discharged (*: Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all the lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5A max.

Front differential

Oil capacity	1.48 qt. (1.40 L, 1.23 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Rear differential

Oil capacity	2.85 qt. (2.70 L, 2.38 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.
Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	With air-cooled type ATF cooler	11.8 qt. (11.2 L, 9.9 Imp.qt.)
	Without air-cooled type ATF cooler	11.6 qt. (11.0 L, 9.7 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of the transmission accompanied by vibration and, ultimately, damage to the vehicle's transmission.

Transfer

Oil capacity	1.5 qt. (1.4 L, 1.2 Imp.qt.)
Oil type*	Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF or equivalent
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Transfer Gear oil LF" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	3.4 in. (86 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake pedal travel*2	5 — 7 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the engine is running.

*2: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 44.1 lbf (196 N, 20.0 kgf).

Chassis lubrication

Propeller shafts Spiders Slide yoke	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.18 in. (30 mm)
Power steering fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III

Tires and wheels

Tire size	P265/60R18 109H
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 32 psi (220 kPa, 2.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J
Wheel nut torque	83 ft•lbf (112 N•m, 11.4 kgf•m)

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights			
	High beam	9005	60	A
	Low beam (discharge bulbs*)	—	35	B
	Low beam (halogen bulbs*)	—	55	C
	Front turn signal lights	—	21	D
	Parking/front side marker lights	—	5	E
	Front fog lights	—	55	C
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	D
	Back-up lights	921	16	E
	Rear side marker lights	—	5	E
	Running board lights	—	5	E
Interior	Personal/Interior lights			
	Front	—	5	E
	Rear	—	5	E
	Vanity lights	—	8	E
	Door courtesy lights	—	5	E

A: HB3 halogen bulbs
B: D4S discharge bulbs
C: H11 halogen bulbs
D: Wedge base bulb (amber)
E: Wedge base bulb (clear)

*: If equipped

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.
Select premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ **Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline**

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ **If your engine knocks**

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ **Gasoline quality**

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ **Gasoline quality standards**

- Automotive manufacturers in the U.S.A., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called the World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC), which is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and improves customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ **Recommendation of the use of gasoline containing detergent additives**

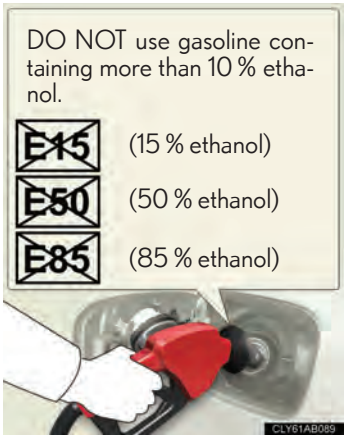
- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid the build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the U.S.A. contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ **Recommendation of the use of cleaner burning gasoline**

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ **Non-recommendation of the use of blended gasoline**



- Use only gasoline containing a maximum of 10 % ethanol.
  DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 10 % ethanol, including from any pump labeled E15, E30, E50, E85 (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 10 % ethanol).
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ **Non-recommendation of the use of gasoline containing MMT**

Some gasoline contains an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

⚠ NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than the type previously stated.
  Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than the level previously stated will cause persistent heavy knocking.
  At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

Fuel-related poor driveability

If poor driveability is encountered after using a different type of fuel (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

When refueling with gasohole

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

Typical tire symbols



1 Tire size (→P. 770)

2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 769)

3 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 628)

4 Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

5 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.

6 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

7 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 774)

8 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 774)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

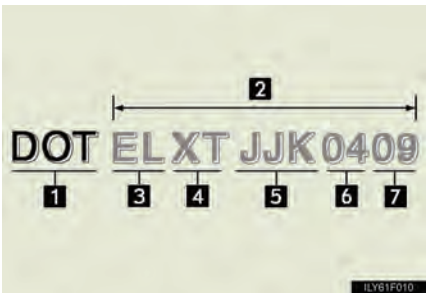
9 Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

10 Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 631)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)



1 DOT symbol*

2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)

3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark

4 Tire size code

5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)

6 Manufacturing week

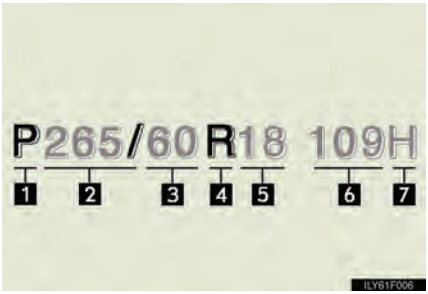
7 Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

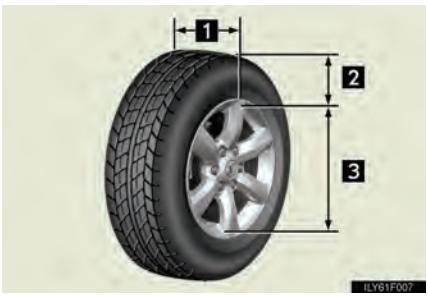
Typical tire size information

The illustration indicates typical tire size.



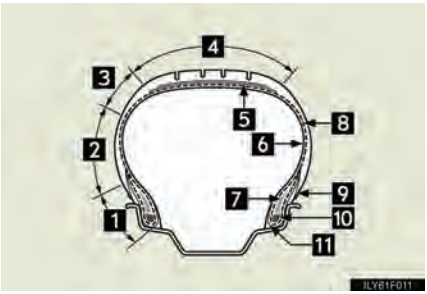
1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
2 Section width (millimeters)
3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
5 Wheel diameter (inches)
6 Load index (2 digits or 3 digits)
7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

Tire dimensions



1 Section width
2 Tire height
3 Wheel diameter

Tire section names



1 Bead
2 Sidewall
3 Shoulder
4 Tread
5 Belt
6 Inner liner
7 Reinforcing rubber
8 Carcass
9 Rim lines
10 Bead wires
11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use. Performance may differ significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades of a tire assume that it is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight

Tire related term	Meaning
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1 that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity

Tire related term	Meaning
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds

Tire related term	Meaning
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass
Intended outboard sidewall	(a)The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b)The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle

Tire related term	Meaning
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10000 lb. or less

Tire related term	Meaning
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall

Tire related term	Meaning
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*: Table 1—Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by your Lexus dealer.

It is also possible to customize certain vehicle features yourself using the menu switch and the "ENTER" switch or the screen of the navigation system.

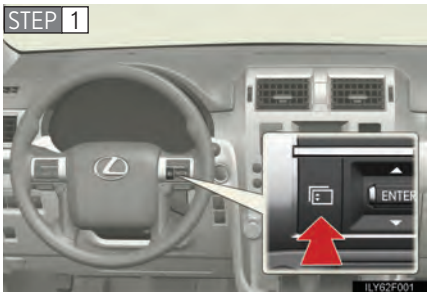
Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Customizing vehicle features

It is possible to customize certain vehicle features using the menu switch and the "ENTER" switch.*

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.

STEP 1



Press and hold the menu switch to display customization mode.



1 Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards to select the item to be customized.
2 Press the "ENTER" switch to confirm.



1 Press the "ENTER" switch upwards or downwards to select the desired setting for the item being customized.
2 Press the "ENTER" switch to confirm.

When customization is completed, press the menu switch to clear the customization screen.

*: For instructions on customizing vehicle features using the screen of the navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Customizable features

1 Vehicles with a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the screen of the navigation system

2 Vehicles with a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the menu switch and the "ENTER" switch

3 Vehicles without a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the menu switch and the "ENTER" switch

4 Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – =Not available

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Door lock (→P. 50, 739)	Unlock on Second Key Turn (Allows all doors to be unlocked by turning the mechanical key once in the driver's door)*1	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	All doors unlocked in first step	O	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Door lock (→P. 50, 739)	SPEED SENSITIVE AUTO. LOCK (All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph [20 km/h] or higher)	Off	On	O	–	O	O
	SHIFT-LINKED AUTOMATIC LOCK (All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever to position other than P)	On	Off	O	–	O	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Door lock (→P. 50, 739)	SHIFT-LINKED AUTOMATIC UNLOCK (All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P)	On	Off	O	–	O	O
	DRIVER DOOR-LINKED UNLOCK (All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened)	Off	On	O	–	O	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control (→P. 29, 47)	LOCK FEEDBACK VOLUME (Adjust the volume of conformation buzzer sounds when the vehicle is locked or unlocked)	7	Off	○	–	○	○
			1 to 6				
	LOCK/UNLOCK ANSWER BACK RESPONSE (Enable/disable the operation of the emergency flashers when the vehicle is locked or unlocked)	On	Off	○	–	○	○

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control (→P. 29, 47)	AUTO. RELOCK TIME ADJUSTMENT (Adjust the time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked)	60 seconds	Off	O	–	O	O
			30 seconds				
			120 seconds				
	Open door reminder buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Glass hatch opening operation (When the electronic key is used)	Push and hold (Short)	Push twice	–	–	–	O
			One short push				
			Push and hold (Long)				
			Off				

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 29)	SELECT DOORS TO UNLOCK (The doors that are unlocked using the smart access system with push button start can be selected)	Driver's door	All the doors	O	–	O	O
	ACCESS SYSTEM WITH ELEC. KEY (Smart access system with push button start can be disabled)	On	Off	O	–	O	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Wireless remote control (→P. 47)	REMOTE 2-PRESS UNLOCK (Allows all doors to be unlocked by pressing on the electronic key once)	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	All doors unlocked in first step	○	–	○	○
	Panic function	On	Off	–	–	–	○
Automatic light control system (→P. 219)	HEADLIGHT OFF TIME ADJUSTMENT (Adjust the time elapsed before the headlights automatically turn off)	30 seconds	Off	○	–	○	○
			60 seconds				
			90 seconds				

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Automatic light control system (→P. 219)	LIGHT SENSOR SENSITIVITY (Adjust the sensitivity of the ambient light sensor)	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O	O
	DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (Daytime running lights can be disabled)*2	On	Off	O	–	O	O
	Automatic high beam system*3	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn on or off (When the headlight switch is in "AUTO" position)	Standard	Long	–	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Illumination (→P. 519)	INTERIOR LIGHTS OFF TIME ADJUSTMENT (Adjust the time elapsed before the interior lights automatically turn off)	15 seconds	Off	○	–	○	○
			7.5 seconds				
			30 seconds				
	EXT. LIGHTS OFF TIME ADJUSTMENT (Adjust the time elapsed before the exterior illumination automatically turn off)	15 seconds	Off	○	–	○	○
			7.5 seconds				
			30 seconds				

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Illumination (→P. 519)	Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF*4	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Operation when the doors are unlocked with the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control function*4	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person*4	On	Off	–	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Illumination (→P. 519)	Footwell lighting	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Running board lights	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Enable/disable operation of the running board lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Enable/disable operation of the running board lights when a door is opened	On	Off	–	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Instrument cluster (→P. 196)	Instrument Dim. Sensitivity (Adjust the sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the instrument cluster glass etc.)	Standard	-2 to 2	○	–	–	○
	Instrument Rest. Sensitivity (Adjust the sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for restoring the brightness of the instrument cluster glass etc.)	Standard	-2 to 2	○	–	–	○

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Front automatic air conditioning system*1,2	Efficient Ventilation Mode (Enable/disable switching of the air intake control mode to automatic when the "AUTO" switch ON)	On	Off	O	–	–	O
	Auto A/C Mode (Enable/disable automatic operation of the air conditioning compressor when the "AUTO" switch ON)	On	Off	O	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Front automatic air conditioning system*1,2	Smog Sensor Sensitivity (Adjust the sensitivity of exhaust gas sensor used for the Efficient Ventilation Mode)	Standard	-3 to 3	○	–	–	○
Front seats (→P. 63)	DRIVER'S SEAT EASY EXIT (The distance the driver's seat moves backward when exiting the vehicle can be selected)	Full	Off	○	–	○	○
			Partial				

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 210)	ECO INDICATIOR DISPLAY (The Eco Driving Indicator Light can be enabled/disabled)	On	Off	–	O	O	–
Power windows (→P. 101)	Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	–	–	–	O
Moon roof (→P. 104)	Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	–	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation*5	Off	On	–	–	–	O

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Intuitive parking assist-sensor*1,3 (→P. 266)	Alert Volume (Alert volume can be adjusted)	3	1 to 5	O	–	–	O
	Display (Automatic display off the LEXUS Park Assist graphic can be enabled/disabled)	On	Off	O	–	–	O
	Distance (Distance mode can be selected) (Front or rear individually)	Long	Short	O	–	–	O

*1: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".
*2: This function cannot be customized for vehicles sold in Canada.
*3: If equipped.
*4: Interior or exterior illumination can be set separately.
*5: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

Multi-information display (→P. 204, 212)

Settings that can be changed using the menu switch and the “ENTER” switch.

Available units	km, km/L km, L/100km MI., MPG (US)

Available languages (accessory meters and optitron type meters)	
For U.S.A.	English (U.S.A.) and Spanish
For Canada	English (U.S.A.), French and Spanish

■ **In the following situations, customize mode will automatically be turned off.**

- A warning message appears after the customize mode screen is displayed.
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to OFF.
- The vehicle begins to move while the customize mode screen is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

Cautions during customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Engine oil maintenance data	• After changing engine oil	P. 614

For owners 7

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners..... 804
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)..... 805
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)..... 807

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

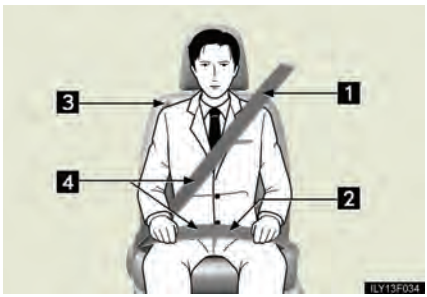
If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation adéquate des ceintures de sécurité



1 Tirez sur la ceinture épaulière jusqu'à ce qu'elle recouvre entièrement l'épaule; elle ne doit cependant pas toucher le cou ni glisser de l'épaule.

2 Placez la ceinture abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.

3 Réglez la position du dossier du siège. Tenez-vous assis dans le fond du siège, le dos droit.

4 Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Entretien et soin

Ceintures de sécurité

Avec un tissu ou une éponge, nettoyez à l'aide d'un savon doux et de l'eau tiède. Vérifiez aussi les ceintures régulièrement pour vous assurer qu'elles ne présentent pas d'usure excessive, d'effilochage ou de coupures.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Dommages et usure de la ceinture de sécurité

Vérifiez périodiquement le système de ceintures de sécurité. Assurez-vous qu'il n'y a pas de coupures, d'effilochures ni de pièces desserrées. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité endommagée avant qu'elle soit remplacée. Les ceintures de sécurité endommagées ne peuvent pas protéger les occupants contre les blessures.

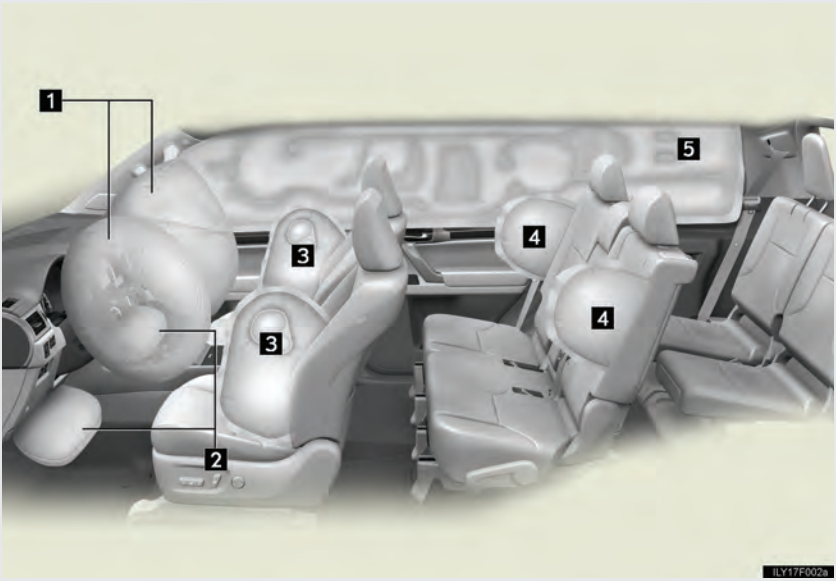
■ Lorsque vous utilisez la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges



N'utilisez pas la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges si l'une des boucles est retirée. Fixer une seule boucle pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de freinage brusque ou de collision.

The following is a French explanation of SRS airbag instructions extracted from the SRS airbag section in this manual.

See the SRS airbag section for more detailed SRS airbag instructions in English.



Coussins gonflables avant SRS

1 Coussin gonflable SRS du conducteur/du passager avant
Peut aider à protéger la tête et la poitrine du conducteur et du passager avant contre les impacts avec des composants intérieurs.

2 Coussins gonflables SRS de protection des genoux
Peuvent aider à protéger le conducteur et le passager avant.

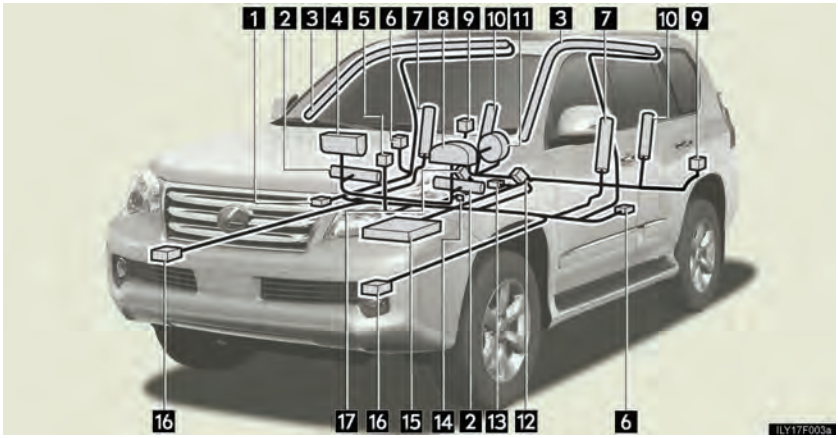
Coussins gonflables SRS latéraux et coussins gonflables en rideau

3 Coussins gonflables SRS latéraux avant
Peuvent aider à protéger le torse des occupants des sièges avant.

4 Coussins gonflables SRS latéraux arrière (si le véhicule en est doté)
Peuvent aider à protéger le torse des occupants des sièges extérieurs de la deuxième rangée.

5 Coussins gonflables SRS en rideau
Peuvent aider à protéger principalement la tête des occupants des sièges extérieurs.

Composants du système de coussins gonflables SRS



1 Système de classification de l'occupant du siège du passager avant (ECU et capteurs)
2 Coussins de protection des genoux
3 Coussin gonflable en rideau
4 Coussin gonflable du passager avant
5 Lampes témoins "AIR BAG ON" et "AIR BAG OFF"
6 Capteur des coussins gonflables latéraux et en rideau
7 Coussin gonflable latéral avant
8 Lampes témoin SRS et "RSCA OFF"
9 Capteur de coussin gonflable en rideau et latéral arrière (si le véhicule en est doté)
10 Coussin gonflable latéral arrière (sièges extérieurs de la deuxième rangée) (si le véhicule en est doté)
11 Coussin gonflable du conducteur
12 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du conducteur
13 Capteur de plancher
14 Contacteur "RSCA OFF"
15 Module de capteur de coussin gonflable
16 Capteur de coussins gonflables avant
17 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du passager avant

Votre véhicule est équipé de COUSSINS GONFLABLES ÉVOLUÉS dont la conception s'appuie sur les normes de sécurité des véhicules à moteur américains (FMVSS208). Le système de coussins gonflables contrôle la puissance de déploiement des coussins du conducteur et du passager avant. Le système du conducteur est constitué du contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité, etc. Le système du passager avant est constitué du capteur de classification de l'occupant du siège du passager avant, etc.

Les composants principaux du système de coussins gonflables SRS sont illustrés ci-dessus. Le système de coussins gonflables SRS est contrôlé par le module de capteur de coussin gonflable. Le module de capteur de coussin gonflable est constitué d'un capteur de sûreté et d'un capteur principal.

Lors de certains types de collision frontale ou latérale violente, ou lors d'un retournement, le système de coussins gonflables SRS déclenche les gonfleurs des coussins. Une réaction chimique se produit dans les gonfleurs et les coussins gonflables se remplissent rapidement d'un gaz non toxique pour limiter le mouvement des occupants.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS

Veuillez observer les précautions suivantes concernant les coussins gonflables SRS.
Les négliger pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité de la manière appropriée.
  Les coussins gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs supplémentaires qui doivent être utilisés de concert avec les ceintures de sécurité.
- Le coussin gonflable SRS du conducteur se déploie avec une force considérable et peut occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, notamment lorsque le conducteur se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. La National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), aux États-Unis, donne les recommandations suivantes:

  La zone à risque d'un coussin gonflable côté conducteur couvre 2 à 3 in. (50 à 75 mm) de la zone de déploiement du coussin gonflable. Pour assurer une marge de sécurité suffisante, restez à 10 in. (25 cm) du coussin gonflable. Cette distance est mesurée depuis le centre du volant jusqu'à votre sternum. Si vous vous tenez à moins de 10 in. (25 cm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de plusieurs manières:

  - Reculez votre siège à la position maximale vous permettant d'atteindre encore aisément les pédales.
  - Inclinez légèrement le dossier du siège.
    Même si les véhicules sont conçus différemment, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent maintenir une distance de 10 in. (25 cm), même si le siège se trouve complètement vers l'avant, simplement en inclinant un peu le dossier du siège vers l'arrière. Si la visibilité avant est moindre après avoir incliné le dossier du siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et non glissant pour être assis plus haut ou relevez l'assise du siège si cette option est disponible sur votre véhicule.
  - Si votre volant est réglable en hauteur, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela vous permet d'orienter le coussin gonflable vers votre buste plutôt que vers la tête et le cou.

Le siège doit être réglé de la manière recommandée ci-dessus par la NHTSA, tout en gardant le contrôle des pédales et du volant, et la vue sur les commandes et les instruments.

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



- Si la rallonge de ceinture de sécurité a été reliée à la boucle des ceintures de sécurité des sièges avant sans avoir été attachée à la plaque de blocage des ceintures de sécurité, le système de coussins gonflables SRS avant considérera que le conducteur et le passager avant portent tout de même leur ceinture même si elles ne sont pas attachées. Les coussins gonflables SRS avant peuvent alors ne pas s'activer correctement lors d'une collision, ce qui représente un risque de blessures graves, voire mortelles. Bouclez toujours votre ceinture de sécurité lorsque vous utilisez la rallonge.

- Le coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant se déploie également avec une force considérable et peut occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, notamment lorsque le passager avant se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. Le siège du passager avant doit se trouver le plus loin possible du coussin gonflable et le dossier doit être réglé de manière à ce que le passager avant soit assis bien droit.

- Le déploiement d'un coussin gonflable risque d'infliger des blessures graves, voire mortelles, aux bébés et aux enfants mal assis et/ou mal attachés. Un bébé ou un enfant trop petit pour utiliser une ceinture de sécurité doit être correctement retenu à l'aide d'un dispositif de retenue pour enfants. Lexus recommande vivement de placer et d'attacher correctement tous les bébés et enfants sur les sièges arrière du véhicule à l'aide de systèmes de retenue adaptés. Les sièges arrière sont plus sécuritaires pour les bébés et les enfants que le siège du passager avant.

- Ne placez jamais un dispositif de retenue pour enfants de type dos à la route sur le siège du passager avant, même si la lampe témoin "AIR BAG OFF" est allumée. En cas d'accident, la force et la vitesse de déploiement du coussin gonflable du passager avant sont telles qu'elles pourraient infliger à l'enfant des blessures graves, voire mortelles, si le dispositif de retenue pour enfants du type dos à la route était installé sur le siège du passager avant.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



- Ne vous asseyez pas sur le bord du siège et ne vous appuyez pas sur le tableau de bord.



- Ne laissez pas un enfant se tenir face au coussin gonflable SRS du passager avant ou s'asseoir sur les genoux d'un passager avant.
- Ne laissez pas les occupants du siège avant tenir des objets sur leurs genoux.



- Ne vous appuyez pas sur la portière ou sur le longeron du toit, ni sur les montants avant, centraux ou arrière.

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS



- Ne laissez personne s'agenouiller face à la portière sur le siège du passager ou sortir la tête ou les mains à l'extérieur du véhicule.



- Ne fixez et n'appuyez rien sur des zones telles que le tableau de bord, le tampon de volant ou encore la partie inférieure du bloc d'instrumentation.
  Ces objets peuvent se transformer en projectiles lorsque les coussins gonflables SRS du conducteur, du passager avant ou de protection des genoux se déploient.



- Ne fixez rien sur les portières, le pare-brise, les glaces latérales, les montants avant, central ou arrière, le longeron du toit ou la poignée d'appui.
- N'accrochez pas de cintres ni d'autres objets rigides sur les crochets porte-vêtements. Tous ces objets pourraient se transformer en projectiles et vous occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de déploiement du coussin gonflable SRS en rideau.

⚠ ATTENTION

Précautions relatives aux coussins gonflables SRS

- Si un recouvrement de vinyle est placé sur la zone de déploiement du coussin SRS de protection des genoux, veillez à le retirer.
- N'utilisez pas d'accessoires recouvrant les parties du siège où les coussins gonflables SRS latéraux se déploient, car ceux-ci pourraient nuire au déploiement de ces coussins. De tels accessoires peuvent empêcher les coussins gonflables latéraux de se déployer correctement, rendre le système inopérant ou provoquer accidentellement le déploiement des coussins gonflables latéraux, avec pour conséquence possible des blessures graves, voire mortelles.
- Ne frappez pas et n'appliquez pas une pression importante à l'emplacement des composants de coussins gonflables SRS.
  Vous risquez de provoquer un mauvais fonctionnement des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Ne touchez à aucun composant des coussins gonflables SRS immédiatement après leur déploiement (gonflage), car ils pourraient être chauds.
- Si vous avez de la difficulté à respirer après le déploiement des coussins gonflables SRS, ouvrez une portière ou une glace pour laisser entrer l'air, ou quittez le véhicule si vous pouvez le faire en toute sécurité. Dès que possible, nettoyez tous les résidus afin d'éviter les irritations cutanées.
- Si les emplacements de stockage des coussins gonflables SRS, notamment le tampon de volant et les garnitures des montants avant, central et arrière, sont endommagés ou fissurés, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Lexus.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Modification et mise au rebut des composants du système de coussins gonflables SRS

Ne mettez pas le véhicule au rebut et n'effectuez aucune des modifications suivantes sans d'abord consulter votre concessionnaire Lexus. Le coussin gonflable SRS pourrait fonctionner de manière incorrecte ou se déployer (gonfler) accidentellement, ce qui serait susceptible d'occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

- Installation, retrait, démontage et réparation des coussins gonflables SRS
- Réparations, modifications, retrait ou remplacement du volant, du bloc d'instrumentation, du tableau de bord, des sièges ou du capitonnage des sièges, des montants avant, central ou arrière et du longeron du toit
- Réparations ou modifications de l'aile ou du pare-chocs avant, ou du côté de l'habitacle
- Installation de lames de déneigement, de treuils, etc. sur la calandre avant (barre safari, barre kangourou, etc.)
- Modifications du système de suspension du véhicule
- Installation d'appareils électroniques tels qu'un émetteur-récepteur radio ou un lecteur de CD
- Modifications à votre véhicule pour une personne aux capacités physiques réduites

Index

Abbreviation list 818

Alphabetical index 820

What to do if... 832

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Audio/video system
- Rear seat entertainment system
- Air conditioning
- Windshield wiper de-icer
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging
- Hands-free system (for cellular phone)
- Intuitive parking assist
- Wide view front & side monitor
- Lexus Enform with Safety Connect

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
4WD	Four Wheel Drive
ABS	Anti-Lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift control
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
AVS	Adaptive Variable Suspension System
CRS	Child Restraint System
DAC	Downhill Assist Control system
DISP	Display
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event Data Recorder
EFI	Electric Fuel Injection
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Ratings
GCWR	Gross Combination Weight Rating
GPS	Global Positioning System
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
HI	High

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
KDSS	Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System
LATCH	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children
LDA	Lane Departure Alert
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LO	Low
MMT	Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
M + S	Mud and Snow
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
N	Normal
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
RDS	Radio Data System
RSCA	Roll Sensing of Curtain Shield Airbag
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Warning System
TRAC	Traction Control
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

Alphabetical index

A

A/C
- Front automatic air conditioning system* 392
- Rear automatic air conditioning system* 407

ABS 335

Active traction control 336

Adaptive front lighting system 223

Adaptive variable suspension system 321

AFS 223

Air conditioning filter 642

Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 642
- Front automatic air conditioning system* 392
- Rear automatic air conditioning system* 407

Airbags
- Airbag deployment conditions 126
- Airbag precautions for your child 132
- Airbag warning light 690
- Front passenger occupant classification system 139
- General airbag precautions 131
- Locations of airbags 122
- Modification and disposal of airbags 136
- Proper driving posture 120
- Side airbag precautions 133
- Side and curtain shield airbags deployment conditions 127
- Side and curtain shield airbag precautions 134
- SRS airbags 122

Alarm 117

Antenna 420

Anti-lock brake system 335

Armrest 554

Audio input 459

Audio system
- Antenna 420
- Audio input 459
- AUX port 459
- CD player/changer 423
- iPod 440
- MP3/WMA disc 431
- Optimal use 457
- Portable music player 459
- Radio 415
- Steering wheel audio switch 460
- USB memory 448

Audio/video remote controls*

Audio/video system*

Automatic air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 642
- Front automatic air conditioning system* 392
- Rear automatic air conditioning system* 407

Automatic light control system 219

Automatic transmission
- Automatic transmission 186
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 737
- S mode 189

AUX port* 459

Auxiliary box 533, 560

AVS 321

B

Back door
- Back door 53
- Wireless remote control 47

Back-up lights
- Replacing light bulbs 671
- Wattage 763

Battery
- Battery 623
- Checking 623
- If the vehicle has discharged battery 741
- Preparing and checking before winter 366

Bluetooth®* 464, 485
Bottle holders/door pockets 529
Brake
- Fluid 619
- Parking brake 193

Brake assist 335
Brake in tips 169
Brightness control
- Multi-information display light control 215
- Instrument cluster light control 196

C

Care
- Exterior 588
- Interior 593
- Seat belts 594

Cargo capacity 359
Cargo hooks 558
Cargo net hooks 559
CD player/changer* 423
Center differential lock/unlock 323
Chains 366
Child restraint system
- Booster seats, definition 146
- Booster seats, installation 154
- Convertible seats, definition 146
- Convertible seats, installation 154
- Front passenger occupant classification system 139
- Infant seats, definition 146
- Infant seats, installation 154
- Installing CRS with lower anchorages 152
- Installing CRS with seatbelts 154
- Installing CRS with top straps 160

Child safety
- Airbag precautions 132
- Battery precautions 623, 743
- Child restraint system 146
- Child-protectors 51
- How your child should wear the seatbelt 88
- Installing child restraints 151
- Moon roof precautions 108
- Power window lock switch 101
- Power window precautions 103
- Removed electronic key battery precautions 646
- Seat belt extender precautions 92
- Seat belt precautions 89
- Seat heater precautions 553

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Child-protectors 51
Cleaning
Exterior 588
Interior 593
Seat belts 594
Clock* 540
Coat hooks 555
Coin holder 528
Compass 575
Condenser 618
Console box 526
Conversation mirror 541
Cool box 535
Cooling system
Engine overheating 744
Cornering assist sensors 266
Crawl Control 328
Cruise control
Cruise control 246
Dynamic radar cruise control 250
Cup holders 530
Curtain shield airbags 122
Customizable features 782

D

Daytime running light system 224
DAC 332
Defogger
Rear window 411
Side mirror 411
Dimension 752
Dinghy towing 389
Display
Dynamic radar cruise control 250
Multi-information display 204, 212
Trip information 204, 212
Warning message 700
Do-it-yourself maintenance 603
Door courtesy lights
Door courtesy lights 519
Wattage 763
Door pocket 529
Doors
Back door 53
Power windows 101
Door lock 47, 50
Rear door child protector 51
Side doors 50
Side mirrors 97
Downhill assist control system 332
Driver's seat belt reminder light 692
Driving
Correct posture 120
Off-road precautions 353
Procedures 168
Winter driving tips 366
Driving position memory 78

E

Electronic key
If the electronic key does not operate properly ... 739
Emergency, in case of
If the electronic key does not operate properly ... 739
If the engine will not start ... 735
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P ... 737
If the vehicle has discharged battery ... 741
If the warning buzzer sounds ... 688
If the warning light turns on ... 688
If the warning message is displayed ... 700
If you have a flat tire ... 721
If you lose your keys ... 738
If you think something is wrong ... 683
If your vehicle becomes stuck ... 747
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency ... 749
If your vehicle needs to be towed ... 677
If your vehicle overheats ... 744
Emergency flashers
Switch ... 676
Engine
Accessory mode ... 179
Compartment ... 609
Engine switch ... 179
Hood ... 608
How to start the engine ... 179
Identification number ... 753
If the engine will not start ... 735
Ignition switch ... 179
Overheating ... 744
Engine compartment cover ... 610
Engine coolant
Capacity ... 757
Checking ... 616
Preparing and checking before winter ... 366
Engine coolant temperature gauge ... 195
Engine immobilizer system ... 115
Engine oil
Capacity ... 755
Checking ... 611
Preparing and checking before winter ... 366
Engine oil maintenance data ... 613
Engine switch ... 179
Engine switch light ... 519
Event data recorder ... 685

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

F
Floor mats 556
Fluid
Brake 619
Power steering 621
Washer 627
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 666
Switch 233
Wattage 763
Footwell light 519
Four-wheel drive system 322
Front passenger occupant classification system 139
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 692
Front seats
Adjustment 63
Driving position memory 78
Front side marker light
Replacing light bulbs 667
Wattage 763
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 668
Switch 192
Wattage 763
Fuel
Capacity 754
Fuel gauge 195
Fuel pump shut off system 684
Gas station information 836
Information 764
Refueling 109
Fuel door 109
Fuel filler door 109
Fuel pump shut off system 684
Fuses 647

G
Garage door opener 567
Gas station information 836
Gauges 195
Glove box 525
Glove box light 525

H
Hands-free system for cellular phones* 485
Hazard lights
Switch 676
Head restraints
Adjustment 82
Headlights cleaner 245
Headlights
Adaptive front lighting system 223
Discharge headlights precautions 674
Replacing light bulbs 663
Switch 219
Wattage 763
Heaters
Seat heaters 551
Side mirror 411
Heated steering 549
Height control
Rear height control air suspension 316

Hill-start assist control 336
Hood 608
Hooks
Cargo 558
Cargo hooks 559
Coat 555
Horn 194

I
I/M test 602
Identification
Engine 753
Vehicle 753
Ignition switch 179
Ignition switch light
Ignition switch light 519
Illuminated entry system 522
Indicator lights 198
Initialization
Items to initialize 802
Inside door handle light 519
Inside rear view mirror 95
Instrument cluster light control 196
Interior lights
Interior lights 519
Switch 521
Wattage 763
Intuitive parking assist 266

J
Jack
Vehicle-equipped jack 721
Jack handle 721

K
Keyless entry 47
Keys
Electronic key 26
Engine switch 29
If you lose your keys 738
If the electronic key does not operate properly 739
Key number plate 26
Keyless entry 47
Keys 26
Mechanical key 26
Wireless remote control key 47
Kinetic Dynamic Suspension System (KDSS) 336

L
Lane Departure Alert 275
LDA 275
License plate lights
Replacing light bulbs 672
Light bulbs
Replacing 662
Wattage 763

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Lights
- Door courtesy lights 519
- Emergency flasher switch 676
- Engine switch light 519
- Fog light switch 233
- Hazard light switch 676
- Headlights switch 219
- Inside door handle light 519
- Interior lights list 519
- Personal/interior lights 521
- Replacing light bulbs 662
- Running board lights 519
- Scuff lights 519
- Shift lever light 519
- Turn signal lever 192
- Vanity lights 539
- Wattage 763

Load capacity 364
Luggage cover 560

M
Maintenance
- Do-it-yourself maintenance 603
- General maintenance 598
- Maintenance data 752
- Maintenance requirements 596

Meter
- Instrument cluster light control 196
- Meters 195

Micro dust and pollen filter 401
Mirrors
- Inside rear view mirror 95
- Side mirror heater 411
- Side mirrors 97
- Vanity mirrors 539

Moon roof 104
MP3 disc 431
Multi-information display
- Brightness control 215

Multi-information display 204, 212
Multi Terrain ABS 335
Multi-terrain Monitor 304
Multi-terrain Select 296

N
Navigation system*
Noise from under vehicle 20

O
Odometer 195
Off-road precautions 353
Oil
- Engine oil 611

Opener
- Fuel filler door 109
- Hood 608

Outside rear view mirrors
- Adjusting and folding 97
- Driving position memory 78

Outside temperature display 205, 212
Overhead console 533
Overheating, Engine 744

P
Parking assist sensors 266
Parking brake 193
Parking lights
- Replacing light bulbs 667
- Switch 219
- Wattage 763

PCS 343

Personal lights
Personal lights....519
Switch....521
Wattage....763
Power steering
Fluid....621
Power outlet....542, 544
Power windows....101
Pre-Collision System....343

R
Radar cruise control....250
Radiator....618
Radio....415
RDS (Radio Date System)....417
Rear height control air suspension....316
Rear seat
Adjustment....67
Folding down the second seatbacks....69, 70
Folding down the third seats....72
Rear side marker lights
Replacing light bulbs....669
Wattage....763
Rear step bumper....54
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....669
Wattage....763
Rear view mirror
Compass....575
Rear view monitor system....281
Rear window defogger*....411
Rear window wiper and washer....242
Replacing
Electronic key battery....644
Fuses....647
Light bulbs....662
Tires....721
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners....804

S
Scuff lighting....519
Seat belts
Adjusting the seat belt....86
Automatic Locking Retractor....87
Child restraint system installation....151
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts....594
Emergency Locking Retractor....87
How to wear your seat belt....85
How your child should wear the seat belt....88
Pre-collision seat belts....87
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use....88
Reminder light....692
Seat belt extenders....89
Seat belt pretensioners....90
Seat heaters....551
Seat position memory....78
Seat ventilator....551
Seating capacity....364

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Seats
Adjustment....63, 67, 78
Adjustment precautions....66, 76, 81
Child seats/child restraint system installation....151
Cleaning....593
Driver's seat position memory....78
Folding down the second seatbacks....69, 70
Folding down the third seats....72
Head restraint....82
Properly sitting in the seat....120
Seat heaters....551
Seat position memory....78
Ventilated seats....551
Service reminder indicators....198
Shift lever
Automatic transmission....186
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P....737
Shift lever lighting....519
Shift lock system....737
Side airbags....122
Side marker lights
Replacing light bulbs....667, 669
Switch....219
Wattage....763
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding....97
Mirror position memory....78
Side turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....672
Smart access system with push-button start
Antenna location....32
Entry functions....29
Starting the engine....179
Spare tire
Inflation pressure....762
Storage location....721
Spark plug....757
Specifications....752
Speedometer....195
Steering
Column lock release....183
Fluid....762
Steering wheel
Adjustment....93
Audio switches....460
Heated steering wheel....549
Steering wheel position memory....78
Stop light
Replacing light bulbs....672
Storage feature....523
Stuck
If your vehicle becomes stuck....747
Sun visors....538

Switch
"ENGINE START STOP" switch 179
Engine switch 179
"2nd STRT" switch 188
Center differential lock/unlock switch 323
"DAC" switch 332
Emergency flasher Switch 676
Fog light switch 233
Hazard light Switch 676
Heated steering wheel switch 549
Height control off switch 316
Ignition switch 179
Light switches 219
Power door lock switch 50
Power window switch 101
"RSCA OFF" switch 137
Rear window defogger switch* 411
Transmission shift switch 189
Window lock switch 101
Wipers and washer switch 236

T

Tachometer 195
Tail lights
Replacing light bulbs 672
Switch 219
Talk switch* 490
Telephones switch* 490
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 117
Engine immobilizer system 115
Tire inflation pressure 635
Tire information
Glossary 774
Size 770
Tire identification number 769
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 772
Tires
Chains 366
Checking 628
If you have a flat tire 721
Inflation pressure 762
Information 768
Pressure warning system 628
Replacing 721
Rotating tires 628
Size 762
Snow tires 366
Spare tire 721
Tire pressure warning system 628
Tools 721
Total load capacity 364
Towing
Dinghy towing 389
Emergency towing 677
Trailer towing 370

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

TRAC....336
Traction control....336
Trailer towing....370
Transmission shift switches....189
Trip information display....212
Trip meter....195
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs....668, 669
Switch....192
Wattage....763

V
Vanity lights
Vanity lights....539
Wattage....763
Vanity mirrors....539
Vehicle identification number....753
Vehicle load limits....364
Ventilators....551
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)....335

W
Warning buzzers
Brake system....706
Open door....692, 704
Open glass hatch reminder....705
Seat belt reminder....692
Third power seat....72
Warning lights
Anti-lock brake system (ABS)....690
Brake system....688
Charging system....689
Kinetic dynamic suspension system....691
Low fuel level....692
Malfunction indicator lamp....689
Master warning light....693
Open door....692
PCS....690
Seat belt reminder light....692
Slip indicator light....690
SRS airbags....690
Tire pressure warning light....693
Warning messages
Automatic transmission fluid temperature....701
Automatic transmission system....701
Brake system....706
Dynamic radar cruise control system....703, 708
Engine oil maintenance....706
Engine oil pressure....700
Intuitive parking assist....702
Low washer level....706
Open door....704
Open glass hatch....705
Open moon roof....705
Pre-collision system....702, 707

Rear height control air suspension system....702
Smart access system with push button start....710
Steering lock system....701
Warning reflector holder....558
Washer
Checking....627
Preparing and checking before winter....366
Switch....236
Washing and waxing....588
Weight
Cargo capacity....358
Load limits....364
Weight....752
Wheels....639
Wide view front & side monitor*....286
Window glasses....101
Window lock switch....101
Windows
Power windows....101
Rear window defogger....411
Washer....236
Windshield wiper de-icer*....412
Windshield wipers....236
Winter driving tips....366
Wireless remote control key
Locking/Unlocking....47
Replacing the battery....644
Wireless remote control key....47
WMA disc....431

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

What to do if...

	A tire punctures	P. 721	If you have a flat tire
	The engine does not start	P. 115	Engine immobilizer system
		P. 735	If the engine will not start
		P. 741	If the vehicle battery is discharged
	The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 737	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"
	The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 744	If your vehicle overheats
	Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
	The key is lost	P. 738	If you lose your keys
	The battery is discharged	P. 741	If the vehicle battery is discharged
	The doors cannot be locked	P. 50	Side doors
		P. 53	Back door
	The horn begins to sound	P. 117	Alarm
	The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 747	If the vehicle becomes stuck

The warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 688 If the warning light turns on



■Warning lights

BRAKE Brake system warning light
or

P. 688

ABS ABS warning light
or

P. 690


Slip indicator light P. 690


Low fuel level warning light P. 692


SRS warning light P. 690


Open door warning light P. 692


Charging system warning light P. 689


Malfunction indicator lamp
or

P. 689


Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 692


Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 692


Tire pressure warning light P. 693

KDSS Kinetic dynamic suspension system warning light P. 691

PCS "PCS" warning light P. 690


Master warning light P. 693

AFS OFF "AFS OFF" indicator light P. 691

AUTO Automatic High Beam indicator light P. 691

LDA "LDA" indicator light P. 691


Cruise control indicator light P. 691

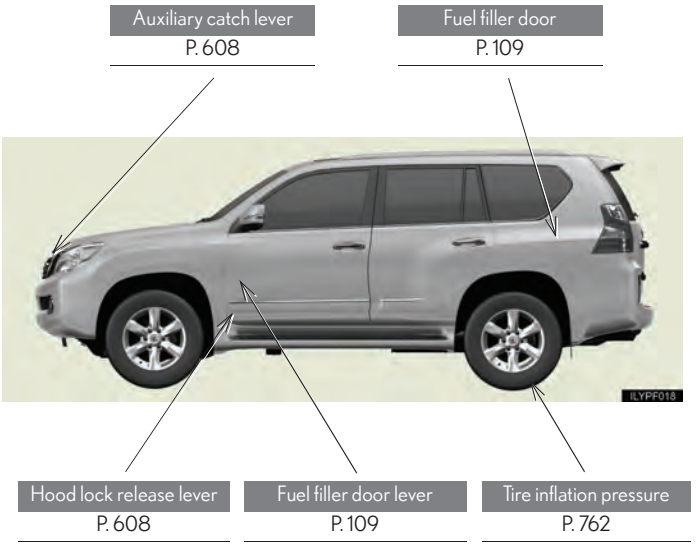

Radar cruise control indicator light P. 691


Multi-terrain Select indicator light P. 691

4LO Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light P. 691


Center differential lock indicator light P. 691

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	23.0 gal. (87 L, 19.1 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only	P. 111, 754
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 762
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)	qt. (L, Imp.qt.) With filter 8.2 (7.8, 6.9) Without filter 7.8 (7.4, 6.5)	
Engine oil type	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil Recommended oil viscosity: SAE 0W-20	P. 755

Owner's Manual:
Publication No. OM60J00U
Part No. 01999-60J00
Printed in Japan 01-1108-00 Z
GX 460（北米U）